

# 1. Guide d'encodage de l'édition des *Seint Confessor* de Wauchier de Denain d'après le manuscrit 412 de la BNF

Ce petit guide a pour but d'expliquer de quelle manière a été encodée en XML-TEI l'édition. Des principes stricts d'encodage ont été déterminés pour produire des données pérennes, interopérables et pour faciliter leur transformation. L'intégralité de l'encodage proposé est donc *TEI conformant*. L'édition des *Seint Confessor* réunit les textes suivants :

- *La Vie de saint Martin*
- *Les Dialogues sur les Vertus de saint Martin*
- *La Vie de saint Brice*
- *La Vie de saint Gilles*
- *La Vie de saint Marcel de Limoges*
- *La Vie de saint Nicolas*
- *La Vie de saint Jérôme*
- *La Vie de saint Benoit*
- *La Vie de saint Alexis*

Le corpus numérique est constitué de neuf fichiers XML TEI distincts correspondant chacun à un texte du recueil. Ces derniers sont réunis dans un *teiCorpus* nommé *CorpusLiSeintConfessor.xml*

## 1.1. Structurer le fichier XML

La structuration des textes contenus dans les fichiers XML suit les recommandations du service CTS, *Canonical Text System* (développé pour le Homer Multitext Project grâce à Christopher Blackwell et Neel Smith). Ce système permet de mettre en place un ensemble de services basés sur l'identification des textes ou de leurs fragments grâce à une référence canonique qui prend la forme d'une URN CTS [Note: Uniform Resource Name, nom d'un standard informatique qui permet d'identifier une ressource indépendamment de sa localisation et de son accessibilité par internet, ce qui permet à cet identifiant d'être pérenne]. Ainsi, cette édition est aisément citable et archivable grâce au respect de normes internationales.

Dans le recueil de Wauchier de Denain, chacune des Vies est encodée dans un fichier XML différent évitant ainsi de faire des fichiers trop longs et permettant de bien séparer chacun des travaux tout en respectant la norme CTS. Les fichiers de l'édition sont nommés et identifiés de la manière suivante : « urn:cts:froLit:jns915.jns1856.ciham-fro1 ». La première partie de l'URN : « urn:cts » indique à quel système de référence appartient l'URN ; ici, la norme CTS. « froLit » signifie que le texte appartient à un corpus des textes en ancien français. Les éléments précédés de « jns » indiquent les identifiants de l'œuvre dans le portail Jonas développé par l'IRHT qui rassemble des répertoires de textes et manuscrits médiévaux en langue d'oc et d'oïl, « 915 » est l'identifiant de l'auteur Wauchier de Denain sur le portail, tandis que 1856 désigne l'œuvre, dans ce cas, la *Vie de saint Martin de Tours*. Enfin la dernière partie de l'URN désigne l'instance éditrice : « ciham-fro1 », dans ce cas nous avons mis le nom de notre laboratoire de rattachement : CIHAM, « fro1 » faisant référence à un répertoire de textes en ancien français n°1, dans le cas où le laboratoire du CIHAM adopterait cette norme pour d'autres projets.

### 1.1.1. Structurer le *teiheader*

Le `<teiHeader>` comporte trois grandes sections :

- **fileDesc** (Description du fichier) permet de donner les informations générales sur le fichier : son créateur, son sujet, le document source.
- **encodingDesc** (Description de l'encodage) donne des informations sur les méthodes de structuration du fichier XML.
- **profileDesc** (Description du texte) permet d'ajouter des informations metatextuelles vers lesquelles on pourra pointer au fil du texte.

#### 1.1.1.1. Le *fileDesc*

Le `<fileDesc>` comporte lui-même :

- **titleStmt** (Eléments généraux sur le fichier courant) permet de renseigner par exemple le nom de l'encodeur et le titre du texte encodé.
- **publicationStmt** (Information sur l'édition) donne les principales informations sur l'édition : nom de l'éditeur, date, conditions de diffusion.
- **sourceDesc** (Description des Sources) donne des informations sur les manuscrits collationnés.

Le `<sourceDesc>` contient toutes les informations nécessaires sur le manuscrit de base, C1 [Note: Le sigle correspond au manuscrit 412 de la Bibliothèque Nationale de France]. L'ensemble des données sont contenues dans un `<msDesc>`

```
<msIdentifier xml:id="ms412">
  <settlement>Paris</settlement>
```

```

<repository>Bibliothèque nationale de France</repository>
<idno>fr. 00412</idno>
</msIdentifier> [...]
<msItemStruct>
  <locus>fol.103-fol.170</locus>
  <author>Wauchier de Denain</author>
  <title>Oeuvres hagiographiques 'Li Seint Confessor' de Wauchier
    de Denain</title>
  <incipit>De saint Martin mout doit on doucement et volentiers le
    bien oïr etentendre</incipit>
  <explicit/>
</msItemStruct>

```

Pour permettre l'établissement de l'apparat critique, l'ensemble des témoins de la tradition est déclaré dans le `<sourceDesc>` dans un élément `<listWit>`. Chaque témoin est contenu dans un élément `<witness>` auquel est attribué un identifiant pour identifier dans l'apparat le manuscrit auquel se réfèrent les différentes leçons. Cet identifiant est ajouté grâce à l'attribut `xml:id`.

```

<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="C1" corresp="#ms412">Paris, manuscrit fr.
    412, Bibliothèque nationale de France, <date when="1285">1285</date>
  </witness>
  <witness xml:id="C2">Paris, manuscrit fr. 411, Bibliothèque
    nationale de France, <date notBefore="1300" notAfter="1400">14e siècle</date>
  </witness>
  <witness xml:id="C3">London, manuscrit, Royal 20.D.VI,
    British Library, <date notBefore="1250" notAfter="1300">13e siècle</date>
  </witness>
  <witness xml:id="G1">Bruxelles, manuscrit 9225 bibliothèque
    royale, <date notBefore="1300" notAfter="1400">14e
    siècle</date>
  </witness>
  <witness xml:id="M1">Paris, manuscrit fr. 23112,
    Bibliothèque nationale de France, <date notBefore="1200" notAfter="1300">13e siècle</date>
  </witness>
</listWit>

```

#### 1.1.1.2. L'encodingDesc

L'`<encodingDesc>` permet de donner des informations sur l'encodage du fichier XML. Dans notre cas, il a permis de déclarer la méthode choisie pour constituer l'apparat critique.

```

<variantEncoding method="parallel-segmentation"
  location="internal"/>

```

L'utilisation de la norme CTS pour structurer le corpus y est également déclarée afin que les fichiers XML puissent être visualisés grâce à l'utilisation d'outils de visualisation ou de gestion de corpus comme les outils Capitains du projet *Perseus* [Note: Thibault Clérice, Bridget Almas et Stella Dee, « Capitains A tool suite for the CTS Norm »], notamment *Capitains Ahab* pour générer la base des données des textes et *Capitains Nemo* [Note: Thibault Clérice, « Capitains Poster at Grenoble's conference Humanites Numeriques#: L'exemple de l'antiquité »] qui permet de générer une interface utilisateur à partir d'un fichier XML utilisant les normes CTS.

```

<refsDecl n="CTS">
  <cRefPattern n="section">
    matchPattern="(.)\.(.)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(/tei:TEI/tei:text/tei:body/tei:div[@n='$1']/tei:div[@n='$2'])">
    <p>This pointer pattern extracts chapter and section</p>
  </cRefPattern>
  <cRefPattern n="chapter">
    matchPattern="(.)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(/tei:TEI/tei:text/tei:body/tei:div[@n='$1'])">
    <p>This pointer pattern extracts chapter.</p>
  </cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>

```

#### 1.1.1.3. Le profileDesc

Le `<profileDesc>` contient les notices de tous les noms de personnage et de lieu apparaissant dans le fichier. Chaque notice possède un identifiant vers lequel vient pointer chacune des apparitions du lieu ou du personnage dans la Vie. Cette méthode permet de générer automatiquement à partir des fichiers XML les index des noms de lieux et des noms propres.

Les notices de nom de personnage sont regroupées dans le `<particDesc>` et `<listPerson>`. Afin de constituer les notices des noms de lieux nous avons utilisé les balises suivantes :

- **person** provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.
- **persName** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.
- **birth** contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place.
- **death** contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place.
- **note** contains a note or annotation.

Elles contiennent un renvoi vers la notice BnF du personnage concerné quand elle existe, le nom du personnage et une courte notice explicative. Si le personnage est un personnage historique, ses dates de naissance et de mort sont spécifiées quand cela est possible.

```

<person corresp="http://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb119423647/PUBLIC"

```

```

xml:id="martin">
  <persName>Martin (saint)</persName>
  <birth when="0316">316</birth>
  <death when="0397-11-08">397</death>
  <note type="biographical"
    source="http://dbpedia.org/page/Martin_of_Tours">
    <surname type="complex">Saint Martin de Tours</surname> est né
    dans en Hongrie dans la colonie romaine de <placeName ref="#sabarie">Sabaria</placeName> en 316. Il est mort à
    <placeName ref="#conde">Candes</placeName> en France le
    8 novembre 397.</note>
</person>

```

Les notices de noms de lieux, regroupées dans le `<settingDesc>` et `<listPlace>` contiennent le nom du lieu, un identifiant grâce à l'attribut `xml:id` et une courte notice explicative si nécessaire. Les occurrences qui apparaissent dans le texte sont signalées pas la balise `<placeName>` et identifiée grâce au pointeur `ref`.

Afin de constituer les notices des noms de lieux nous avons utilisé les balises suivantes :

- **place** contains data about a geographic location
- **placeName** contains an absolute or relative place name.
- **country** contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc.
- **location** defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address.
- **note** contains a note or annotation.

Quand le lieu est une ville identifiée, ses coordonnées sont ajoutées afin de pouvoir à terme faire une carte des lieux cités dans le corpus.

```

<place corresp="http://pleiades.stoa.org/places/423025"
xml:id="rome">
  <placeName full="yes">Rome</placeName>
  <country type="pays">Italie</country>
  <country type="civilisation">Occident</country>
  <location>
    <geo>41.891775, 12.486137</geo>
  </location>
  <note>Ville italienne, capitale de l'empire romain d'occident.</note>
</place>

```

Pour assurer la bonne identification du lien, nous avons ajouté avec *corresp* un lien vers une notice externe de préférence vers le site *Pleiades : Ancient Places* quand cela était possible, sinon vers *data.bnf*

Enfin, afin de pouvoir classer les différents lieux cités par pays, mais aussi en fonction de leur rattachement à l'Orient ou à l'Occident nous avons utilisé l'élément `<country>` avec *type* de valeur pays pour signaler le pays et *type* de valeur civilisation pour indiquer l'appartenance à l'Orient ou à l'Occident.

```

<place corresp="http://pleiades.stoa.org/places/109321"
xml:id="amiens">
  <placeName>Amiens</placeName>
  <country type="pays">France</country>
  <country type="civilisation">Occident</country>
  <location>
    <geo>49.8936075, 2.297948</geo>
  </location>
  <note>Ville du Nord de la France.</note>
</place>

```

### 1.1.2. Structurer les différentes parties du texte

Le corpus est structuré à l'aide des balises suivantes :

- **div** (Divisions principales) permet de structurer les différents éléments du texte.
- **p** (Paragraphe) permet d'individualiser les paragraphes.
- **lg** (Ensemble de vers) permet de regrouper entre eux des vers.
- **l** (Vers) permet de signaler les vers.
- **said** (Dialogue) permet de signaler les dialogues dans le texte.
- **seg** (Segment) permet d'individualiser des segments de texte.

Le texte est structuré à l'intérieur d'une balise `<text>` avec un attribut *n* de valeur *edition* pour signaler que le texte encodé est le texte de l'édition et afin de le différencier, le cas échéant, du fichier contenant la traduction. `<text>` englobe l'élément `<body>` qui possède deux attributs. Le premier, *n*, permet de spécifier l'URN CTS, tandis que le second, `xml:lang`, indique la langue majoritaire du corpus, ici, l'ancien français signifié par la valeur *fro*. Le `<body>` présente des `<div>` de deux niveaux. La `<div>` parent possède un attribut *type* de valeur *chapter* qui correspond à un paragraphe de notre édition. Si le texte présente un titre rubriqué, alors on le fera apparaître dans l'édition dans un élément `<head>`, enfant de la `<div>` de premier niveau. La `<div>` de niveau 2 possède un attribut *type* de valeur *section* qui correspond à un sous-paragraphe dans l'édition. Chacune de ces divisions est numérotée, constituant ainsi un texte divisé en paragraphes et sous-paragraphes identifiés par des numéros afin de permettre une navigation plus aisée et un système de citation de l'édition efficace. À l'intérieur de la `<div>` de niveau 2, le

texte est englobé dans une balise `<p>`. Cette méthode permet d'établir un lien pérenne, une référence de stable pour citer les textes du corpus grâce au respect des normes de citations CTS et à l'encodage TEI.

```
<div type="chapter" n="1">
  <head>De saint Martin</head>
  <div type="section" n="1">
    <p>[...]</p>
  </div>
</div>
```

Au sein même du corpus, en raison de la particularité stylistique de l'auteur qui consiste à ajouter des vers à l'intérieur de son texte en prose, les groupes de vers ont été réunis dans une balise `<lg>` ayant un attribut *n*. Chacun des vers a été englobé dans une balise `<l>` avec un attribut *n*.

```
<div type="section" n="2">
  <p>
    <lg n="1">
      <l n="1">Que demande qi a assez ?</l>
      <l n="2">Ja riches hom n'iert assaz,</l> [...] <l n="14">Qui q'il soit bel ne qui soit lait,</l>
      <l n="15">Por ce s'i devroient tenir.</l>
    </lg>
  </p>
</div>
```

Enfin, l'intégralité des parties dialoguées est englobée dans une balise `<said>` avec un attribut *who* quand l'interlocuteur est un personnage nommé dans le récit. La valeur de l'attribut est alors un pointeur qui renvoie vers la notice du personnage dans le `<teiHeader>`.

```
Seinz Beneoiz lor dist :
<said who="#benoit">Proions nostre Signor qe vos puissiez ve<lb/>oir
celui qi cest moine en meine.</said>
```

Les éléments du texte dans une langue étrangère, latin ou grec dans notre cas, sont signalés à l'aide de l'élément `<seg>` et de son attribut *xml:lang*.

```
Si fist <seg xml:lang="lat">signum crucis</seg> seur lui.
```

## 1.2. De l'édition facsimilaire à l'édition normalisée

La réalisation nativement numérique de cette édition nous a permis de créer une édition multifacette qui peut proposer différentes visualisations du texte, une édition facsimilaire et une normalisée.

### 1.2.1. Encodage de la mise en page du manuscrit

Afin de pouvoir produire à terme une vue facsimilaire de l'édition, des informations sur la disposition du texte dans C1 ont été encodées en utilisant les balises suivantes :

- **pb** (Saut de page)
- **cb** (Saut de colonne)
- **lb** (Saut de ligne)

Chaque saut de page est indiqué avec élément `<pb>` qui contient, grâce à l'attribut *n*, le numéro du folio et, grâce à l'attribut *fac*, un lien vers le folio concerné du manuscrit C1, numérisé sur le site Gallica. L'indication recto ou verso n'est pas ajoutée, car elle sera donnée par la lettre de la colonne.

```
<pb n="104"
  fac="http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/btv1b84259980/f218.highres"/>
```

Chaque saut de colonne est indiqué avec l'élément `<cb>` et contient, grâce à l'attribut *n*, la lettre de la colonne à suivre, a et b désignant la première et la deuxième colonne du recto, tandis que c et d désigne la première et la deuxième colonne du verso.

```
<cb n="a"/>
```

Les lettrines, ainsi que les mots rubriqués ont été indiqués grâce à la balise `<hi>`.

```
<hi rend="decorated-initial">A</hi>donc
```

Ce sont les valeurs de l'attribut *rend* qui indiquent le type de décoration présent dans le manuscrit. Voici la liste des valeurs utilisées dans le corpus :

**rub** désigne les lettres écrites à l'encre rouge.

**cat-  
ed**

**dec** désigne les lettrines décorées qui ouvrent les chapitres.

**o-  
rat-  
ed-ini-  
tial**

**ini** désigne les majuscules bleues qui viennent parfois ouvrir une série de vers dans le corpus.

**tial-  
blue**

On trouve également dans le corpus des majuscules à l'encre rouge, mais elles semblent décoratives et ne donnent pas d'indications de structuration du texte, c'est pourquoi nous ne les avons pas signalées dans l'encodage.

Le cas des titres rubriqués est traité de manière un peu différente pour des problèmes de transformation et afin de structurer plus aisément l'édition normalisée. Nous indiquons dans le texte, à l'aide de la balise *hi* et de la valeur *rubricated* de l'attribut *rend*, le fait que le titre est en rouge, mais nous ajoutons également la valeur d'attribut *orig* pour indiquer que c'est un élément du manuscrit afin que le texte rubriqué n'apparaisse pas dans l'édition normalisée. Toutefois, la rubrique du manuscrit est copiée comme titre du chapitre dans la balise `<head>` qui précède la `<div>` concernée.

```
<head>Miracles de saint Martin</head>
<div type="section" n="1">
  <p>
    <hi rend="rubricated orig">Miracles de saint <lb/>Mar<pc type="orig">.</pc>
    <lb/>tin</hi> [...] </p>
  </div>
```

C'est donc le texte de la balise *head* qui apparaîtra dans l'édition normalisée. Nous avons dû opter pour ce système, car il s'est avéré être le plus simple et juste d'un point de vue sémantique face à des rubriques qui pouvaient être discontinues sur plusieurs lignes. Si l'œil humain parvient très aisément grâce aux couleurs d'encre différentes à regrouper les mots du titre ensemble, l'opération devenait beaucoup plus difficile à opérer à l'aide de balise XML.

### 1.2.2. Encodage des graphies d'origine et des normalisations

L'un des buts de cette édition est de pouvoir proposer une vue facsimilaire et une vue normalisée du texte et donc de pouvoir aisément passer de l'une à l'autre. Cette plasticité est rendue possible par l'utilisation des balises :

- **choice** (Choix) permet d'encoder des alternatives.
- **orig** (Original) permet d'encoder la forme originale du manuscrit.
- **reg** (Régularisation) permet d'encoder la forme régularisée.
- **abbr** (Abréviation) contient la forme originale de l'abréviation dans le manuscrit.
- **expan** (Développement) contient la forme développée de l'abréviation.
- **ex** (Développement) contient les éléments ajoutés de la forme développée d'une abréviation.

Ce balisage permet de conserver dans le code des graphies originales et de les restituer si besoin.

Les régularisations concernent les espaces entre les mots, la graphie des u/v et des i/j, l'ajout de signes diacritiques (accents et trémas) et enfin l'utilisation des majuscules dont l'usage dans le manuscrit ne correspond pas à nos usages modernes. Nous avons donc régularisé leurs emplois selon les usages en rigueur pour l'édition des textes médiévaux afin de faciliter la lecture.

```
<placeName ref="#france">
  <choice>
    <orig>F</orig>
    <reg>F</reg>
  </choice>rance
</placeName>
```

Le signalement et le développement des abréviations fonctionnent sur le même principe. Les caractères spéciaux des abréviations sont signalés par le *Numerical Character Reference Decimal* du signe concerné.

```
<choice>
  <abbr>#</abbr>
  <expan>com</expan>
</choice>
```

Afin d'alléger le code, mais aussi de procéder de manière homogène pour le développement des abréviations, les balises `<choice>` et leur contenu sont dans la plupart des cas appelés par une entité dans les fichiers XML. La liste des entités est contenue dans le fichier dtd *entity-Wauchier.dtd* du projet.

### 1.2.3. Ponctuation originale et ponctuation normalisée

Le texte du manuscrit C1 présente des marques de ponctuation, points simples ou doubles, toutefois l'usage qu'en fait le scribe ne correspond en rien à l'usage moderne. Ainsi, il peut utiliser ces signes pour séparer des propositions relatives de leurs antécédents ou pour séparer des syntagmes au sein même d'une proposition, sans que sa pratique n'ait rien de systématique dans notre corpus. La ponctuation a donc dû être normalisée pour faciliter la lecture du texte. Sur toutes les marques de ponctuations qui ont dû être modifiées, la balise `<pc>` a été ajoutée.

Le corpus présente trois cas de figure. Dans le premier cas, la ponctuation originale est supprimée dans l'édition normalisée. L'ajout de l'attribut *type* de valeur *orig* sur l'élément `<pc>` signale que le signe est issu de la ponctuation du manuscrit et qu'il ne doit pas apparaître dans la version normalisée.

```
car <lb/>adonc estoit
costume en
<placeName ref="#france">
  <choice>
    <orig>f</orig>
    <reg>F</reg>
  </choice>rance
</placeName>
<pc type="orig" ana="completive">.</pc> qe li vilein<lb/> de la contree prenoient les ymages de
lor <lb/>deables
```

Dans le deuxième cas, le manuscrit ne présente aucun signe de ponctuation, mais il est nécessaire d'ajouter un signe pour faciliter la lecture et la compréhension du texte. L'ajout de l'attribut *type* de valeur *reg* sur l'élément `<pc>` signale que le signe est une régularisation de l'éditeur et qu'il ne doit pas apparaître dans la vue facsimilaire de l'édition. Cette méthode est également beaucoup utilisée dans le corpus pour ajouter les apostrophes nécessaires afin de signaler les élisions.

```
l<pc type="reg">'</pc>oneur
```

Dans le troisième cas, le manuscrit présente bien un signe de ponctuation, mais celui-ci ne correspond pas à nos usages modernes. Ainsi, pour faciliter la lecture et la compréhension du texte, le signe de ponctuation doit être modifié. Dans ce cas-là, nous avons opté pour la même méthode que pour les régularisations en utilisant la balise `<choice>`.

```
<choice ana="interrogation">
  <orig>.</orig>
  <reg> ?
</reg>
</choice>
```

De même afin d'alléger la syntaxe du fichier XML, ces balises sont appelées dans le fichier grâce à une entité contenue dans le fichier dtd *entity-Wauchier.dtd* du projet.

Dans les trois cas, l'ajout de l'attribut *ana* est utilisé pour signaler la cause du changement de ponctuation.

### 1.3. L'apparat critique

Cette édition propose un appareil critique afin de montrer les lieux de variance entre les différents témoins de la tradition et rendre compte de la modularité du texte au Moyen Âge. L'intégralité du corpus est accompagnée du relevé des variantes qui apparaissent dans les manuscrits de la famille C. En raison des grandes différences qui peuvent apparaître entre les leçons des différentes familles de manuscrits, mais aussi par manque de temps, seule l'édition de la Vie de saint Martin présente une vision complète de la tradition dont nous avons collationné les variantes de la famille C, ainsi que les variantes d'un représentant de chacune des sept autres familles de manuscrits qui comportent une version de la Vie.

#### 1.3.1. Les corrections

Le texte du manuscrit C1 est extrêmement peu fautif. Nous ne sommes intervenus que dans les cas où la leçon proposée rendait le texte difficilement compréhensible. Les corrections opérées sont dans la majorité des cas issues d'une leçon présente dans les manuscrits de la même famille, la plupart du temps C2 sur lequel nous sommes appuyés en priorité. Elles ont été encodées grâce aux balises suivantes :

- **choice** (Choix) permet d'encoder des alternatives.
- **sic** (Graphie originale mais fautive) permet d'encoder la forme originale du manuscrit tout en signalant que cette dernière est fautive
- **corr** (Correction) permet de signaler les corrections apportées au texte

Trois types de corrections ont été opérés dans le corpus. Quand le texte du manuscrit est difficilement compréhensible en raison d'un manque dans le texte, nous avons ajouté les lettres manquantes dans une balise `<corr>` avec un attribut *type* de valeur *add*.

```
a cel coup en cha<corr type="add">ça</corr> il le deable
```

Quand le texte du manuscrit est difficilement compréhensible en raison d'un ajout de texte, la plupart du temps lié à une faute par dittographie dans le texte, les lettres en trop sont englobées dans une balise `<corr>` avec un attribut *type* de valeur *del*.

```
Li preudom <corr type="del">qi</corr>
<lb/>qi vit le beau liu
```

Enfin, quand le texte présente une erreur ponctuelle dans le texte qui demande le recours à un autre témoin pour remplacer la graphie "fautive" de C1, nous avons utilisé le doublet `<sic>` et `<corr>` englobé dans une balise `<choice>`. Ainsi la vue facsimilaire présentera la graphie originale du manuscrit, tandis que la vue normalisée donnera la version corrigée du texte avec entre crochets les endroits substitués par une leçon alternative issue de C2 ou C3.

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#C2 #C3">adjuto <choice>
    <sic>z</sic>
    <corr type="add">r</corr>
  </choice>
</lem>
<rdg wit="#C1">adjutoz</rdg>
</app>
```

L'intégralité des corrections opérées est également signalée dans l'apparat critique pour renseigner la graphie fautive présente dans le manuscrit de base.

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#C2 #C3">
    <corr type="add">es</corr> escriptures</lem>
  <rdg wit="#C1">escriptures</rdg>
</app>
```

#### 1.3.2. Collations des variantes et mise en place de l'apparat critique

L'apparat critique a été conçu nativement en XML. La méthode de la parallèle segmentation a été choisie pour encoder l'apparat, méthode qui présente l'avantage d'être simple et lisible directement dans le code, car l'apparat est signalé dans la linéarité du texte. Elle permet également d'aisément comparer les leçons entre elles.

Cette édition fait apparaître dans l'apparat une hiérarchie entre deux types de variantes textuelles de la tradition : le lemme et les leçons. Le lemme correspond au texte édité, la plupart du temps équivalent au texte de C1, lui donnant dans l'édition la primauté sur les autres leçons. Ainsi cette édition ne propose pas de parcourir le texte

de tous les témoins, mais donne à lire les différentes leçons présentes dans la tradition, à titre indicatif comme d'autres réalisations textuelles existantes du recueil de Wauchier de Denain. Les particularités de mise en page ou graphiques des manuscrits originaux, comme la présence de lettrines ou d'abréviations, n'ont donc pas été signalées contrairement au texte du lemme.

L'apparat de l'édition suit les prescriptions d'un appareil négatif, exceptionnellement mixte où nous signalons pour le lemme le manuscrit de base si ce dernier diffère du texte proposé dans C1. L'apparat ne présente que les leçons avec un texte sémantiquement différent du lemme. Chaque leçon est rattachée au manuscrit dont elle est issue par un identifiant qui renvoie dans le document XML à l'élément `<witness>` correspondant. Cette méthode permet toutefois de rétablir, à tout moment, les indications nécessaires à l'établissement d'un appareil positif par comparaison entre les sigles de manuscrits cités pour les leçons divergentes et la liste des manuscrits collationnés présente dans le `<teiHeader>` dans l'élément `<listWit>` du document XML.

Afin d'encoder l'apparat nous utilisons les balises suivantes :

- **app** (Apparat) permet d'englober les différentes leçons de la tradition.
- **lem** (Lemme) permet de signaler la leçon choisie dans le texte édité.
- **rdg** (Leçon) permet de signaler une leçon différente de celle du texte édité.

La balise `<lem>` permet de délimiter le texte soumis à des variations et contient toujours le texte édité. Chaque appareil ne peut contenir qu'un élément *lem*.

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#C2 #C3">
    <corr type="add">es</corr> escriptures</lem>
    <rdg wit="#C1">escriptures</rdg>
  </app>
```

Les balises `<rdg>` permettent de signaler les variantes. Leur attribut *wit* permet de déclarer le ou les manuscrits proposant le même texte que celui de la variante concernée. Il se réfère à l'identifiant déclaré dans le `<listWit>`. Quand un manuscrit présente une omission à l'emplacement où devrait se trouver le lemme, le manque est signalé par un attribut *cause* de valeur *om*. pour une omission simple et de valeur *lacune* pour une omission qui s'étant sur plusieurs vers ou un paragraphe.

```
<app>
  <lem> De saint Martin </lem>
  <rdg wit="#C2">Ci commence la vie de monseigneur saint
    Martin</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#C3">Ci comence la vie saint Martin</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#G1" cause="om." />
</app>
```

Nous avons également utilisé *type* sur les balises `<rdg>` pour signaler des types de variantes textuelles particulières. *type* n'accepte qu'une liste de valeur close pour assurer l'homogénéité de l'encodage :

- ajout pour la variante qui consiste en des ajouts
- casAbs pour les leçons où le texte propose une variation sur l'expression du complément du nom avec ou sans l'expression de la préposition "de".
- etym. pour les leçons où la variante propose un terme identique avec un changement de base étymologique. Nous avons ainsi signalé les formes du verbe être étymologiques et les formes refaites sur \*estare.
- erreur pour les leçons où la variante propose une leçon issue d'une erreur évidente de copie.
- inv. pour les inversions
- outil pour les leçons où la variante consiste en la suppression, l'addition ou le remplacement d'un mot outil de type conjonction de coordination, adverbe de phrase, préposition ou conjonction de subordination et qui n'a pas d'influence majeure sur la syntaxe ou le sens de la phrase
- plur. pour les passages du singulier au pluriel
- proPer signale les leçons qui consistent en l'ajout d'un pronom personnel sujet
- sing. pour les passages du pluriel au singulier
- tps. pour les changements de temps ou de mode
- réduction. pour les endroits où le texte est réécrit de manière plus synthétique sans changement majeur de sens

```
<app>
  <lem>en escripture a metre</lem>
  <rdg wit="#G1" type="inv.">a metre en escripture</rdg>
</app>
```

Les leçons rejetées, très peu nombreuses, sont toujours signalées dans le texte comme des corrections ou des suppressions. La graphie fautive présente dans C1 est alors présentée dans l'apparat comme une leçon qui apparaît toujours en tête des variantes

```
<app>
  <lem>
    <corr type="add">es</corr> escriptures</lem>
    <rdg wit="#C1">escriptures</rdg>
  </app>
```

&lt;/app&gt;

## 2. Tableau des éléments

### 2.1. Elements

#### 2.1.1. <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the <code>model.resource</code> class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.typed</code> (@type, @subtype) <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <code>att.global.change</code> (@change) <code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp) <code>att.global.source</code> (@source)
Member of	<code>model.describedResource</code>
Contained by	core: <code>teiCorpus</code> textstructure: <code>TEI</code>
May contain	header: <code>teiHeader</code> textstructure: <code>TEI text</code>
Note	This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace <code>http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0</code> on it, using the <i>xmlns</i> attribute.
Example	<pre>&lt;TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;   &lt;teiHeader&gt;     &lt;fileDesc&gt;       &lt;titleStmt&gt;         &lt;title&gt;The shortest TEI Document Imaginable&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/titleStmt&gt;       &lt;publicationStmt&gt;         &lt;p&gt;First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5           version using a name space.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;sourceDesc&gt;         &lt;p&gt;No source: this is an original work.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;text&gt;     &lt;body&gt;       &lt;p&gt;This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/body&gt;   &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;   &lt;teiHeader&gt;     &lt;fileDesc&gt;       &lt;titleStmt&gt;         &lt;title&gt;A TEI Document containing four page images&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/titleStmt&gt;       &lt;publicationStmt&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Unpublished demonstration file.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;sourceDesc&gt;         &lt;p&gt;No source: this is an original work.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;facsimile&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page1.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page2.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page3.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page4.png"/&gt;   &lt;/facsimile&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt;</pre>
Schematron	<code>&lt;sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/&gt;</code> <code>&lt;sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/&gt;</code>
Schematron	<code>&lt;sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/&gt;</code>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;</pre>



	<pre> &lt;elementRef key="teiHeader" /&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.resource"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded" /&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded" /&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded" /&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element TEI {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attributes,   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* )   TEI+ ) ) } </pre>

## 2.1.2. <abbr>

<b>&lt;abbr&gt;</b> (Abréviation) contient la forme originale de l'abréviation dans le manuscrit. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.choicePart</u> <u>model.pPart.editorial</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;expan&gt;North Atlantic Treaty Organization&lt;/expan&gt;   &lt;abbr cert="low"&gt;NorATO&lt;/abbr&gt;   &lt;abbr cert="high"&gt;NATO&lt;/abbr&gt;   &lt;abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr"&gt;OTAN&lt;/abbr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;abbr&gt;SPQR&lt;/abbr&gt; </pre>

	<pre>&lt;expan&gt;senatus populusque romanorum&lt;/expan&gt; &lt;/choice&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element abbr {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### 2.1.3. <app>

<app> (Apparat) permet d'englober les différentes leçons de la tradition. [12.1.1. The Apparatus Entry]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) (<a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) (<a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) (<a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) (<a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) (<a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p><b>type</b> classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>from</b> identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute should be used when either the double-end point method of apparatus markup, or the location-referenced method with a URL rather than canonical reference, are used.</p> <p><b>to</b> identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, when the encoded apparatus is not embedded <i>in-line</i> in the base-text.</p> <p><b>loc</b> (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used. It supplies a string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.global.edit</a>

Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <b>rs</b> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">text</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">note</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a>
Example	<pre>&lt;app&gt;   &lt;lem wit="#E1 #Hg"&gt;Experience&lt;/lem&gt;   &lt;rdg wit="#La" type="substantive"&gt;Experiment&lt;/rdg&gt;   &lt;rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive"&gt;Eryment&lt;/rdg&gt; &lt;/app&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;app type="substantive"&gt;   &lt;rdgGrp type="subvariants"&gt;     &lt;lem wit="#E1 #Hg"&gt;Experience&lt;/lem&gt;     &lt;rdg wit="#Ha4"&gt;Experiens&lt;/rdg&gt;   &lt;/rdgGrp&gt;   &lt;rdgGrp type="subvariants"&gt;     &lt;lem wit="#Cp #Ld1"&gt;Experiment&lt;/lem&gt;     &lt;rdg wit="#La"&gt;Ex&lt;g ref="#per"/&gt;iment&lt;/rdg&gt;   &lt;/rdgGrp&gt;   &lt;rdgGrp type="subvariants"&gt;     &lt;lem resp="#ed2013"&gt;Eriment&lt;/lem&gt;     &lt;rdg wit="#Ra2"&gt;Eryment&lt;/rdg&gt;   &lt;/rdgGrp&gt; &lt;/app&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;app loc="1"&gt;   &lt;rdg resp="#SEG"&gt;TIM##A&lt;/rdg&gt; &lt;/app&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;app loc="1-6"&gt;   &lt;note&gt;Too badly worn to yield a text&lt;/note&gt; &lt;/app&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;choice xml:id="choice3"&gt;   &lt;reg&gt;##µ#####&lt;/reg&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;#####&lt;/orig&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;app from="#choice3"&gt;   &lt;note&gt;Mommsen's fanciful normalization, reproduced here, has not been accepted by all recent editions&lt;/note&gt; &lt;/app&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="lem" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.rdgLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="witDetail"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="wit"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="rdgGrp"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element app {   att.global.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { text }?,   attribute from { text }?,   attribute to { text }?,   attribute loc { list { + } }?,   ( lem?, ( model.rdgLike   model.noteLike   witDetail   wit   rdgGrp )* ) }</pre>

## 2.1.4. <author>

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) <u>att.canonical</u> (ref, @key)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>titleStmt</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msItemStruct</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes <i>key</i> or <i>ref</i> may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.</p> <p>In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.</p> <p>Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as <i>Unknown</i> or <i>Anonymous</i>. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;author&gt;British Broadcasting Corporation&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;Anonymous&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Beaumont, Francis&lt;/persName&gt; and   &lt;persName&gt;John Fletcher&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;   &lt;orgName key="BBC"&gt;British Broadcasting     Corporation&lt;/orgName&gt;: Radio 3 Network &lt;/author&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element author {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.naming.attribute.role,   att.naming.attribute.nymRef,   att.canonical.attribute.key,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.5. <availability>

<b>&lt;availability&gt;</b> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) (<a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) (<a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) (<a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) (<a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) (<a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.declarable</a> (@default)</p> <p>status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values free</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> the text is freely available.</p> <p><b>unknown</b> the status of the text is unknown.</p> <p><b>restricted</b> the text is not freely available.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a>
<b>Note</b>	A consistent format should be adopted
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;availability status="restricted"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available for academic research purposes only.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;availability status="free"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;In the public domain&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;availability status="restricted"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available under licence from the publishers.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;availability&gt;   &lt;licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The MIT License       applies to this document.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy       of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal       in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights       to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell       copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is       furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in       all copies or substantial portions of the Software.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR       IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,       FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE       AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER       LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,       OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN       THE SOFTWARE.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/licence&gt; &lt;/availability&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	element availability

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

## 2.1.6. <bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) ( <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.docStatus</u> (@status)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblLike</u> <u>model.biblPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>corr</u> <u>del</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>msItemStruct</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>location</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>availability</u> <u>extent</u> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>height</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>msIdentifier</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	Contains <i>phrase-level</i> elements, together with any combination of elements from the <u>model.biblPart</u> class
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bibl&gt;Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)&lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bibl&gt; &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt;. In &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberger&lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;. &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt; &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003"&gt; &lt;author&gt; &lt;name&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Carlin&lt;/surname&gt; (&lt;forename&gt;Claire&lt;/forename&gt;)&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Staging of Impotence : France's last congrès&lt;/title&gt; dans &lt;bibl type="monogr"&gt; &lt;title level="m"&gt;Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W. Tobin&lt;/title&gt;, éd. &lt;editor&gt; &lt;name&gt; &lt;forename&gt;Claire&lt;/forename&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Carlin&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/name&gt; &lt;/editor&gt; et &lt;editor&gt; &lt;name&gt; &lt;forename&gt;Kathleen&lt;/forename&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Wine&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/name&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;/editor&gt;, &lt;pubPlace&gt;Charlottesville, Va.&lt;/pubPlace&gt;, &lt;publisher&gt;Rookwood Press&lt;/publisher&gt;, &lt;date when="2003"&gt;2003&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.highlighted"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.data"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.segLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.ptrLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.biblPart"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element bibl {   att.global.attributes,   att.declarable.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   att.sortable.attributes,   att.docStatus.attributes,   (     text       model.gLike       model.highlighted       model.pPart.data       model.pPart.edit       model.segLike       model.ptrLike       model.biblPart       model.global   ) * } </pre>

### 2.1.7. <birth>

<birth> contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence) <u>att.dataable</u> (@calendar, @period) (<u>att.dataable.w3c</u> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<u>att.dataable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <u>att.dimensions</u> (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (<u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) (<u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref)) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.typed</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Sample values include:</b> caesarean (caesarean section) an vaginal (vaginal delivery)</p>

	<p>exNi- hi- (ex nihilo) lo in- cor- po- rat- ed found- ed es- tab- lished</p>
Member of	<a href="#">model.personPart</a>
Contained by	<b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">person</a>
May contain	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
Example	<code>&lt;birth&gt;Before 1920, Midlands region.&lt;/birth&gt;</code>
Example	<code>&lt;birth when="1960-12-10"&gt;In a small cottage near &lt;name type="place"&gt;Aix-la-Chapelle&lt;/name&gt; early in the morning of &lt;date&gt;10 Dec 1960&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/birth&gt;</code>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element birth {   att.global.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.datable.attributes,   att.dimensions.attributes,   att.naming.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { text }?,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### 2.1.8. <body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Contained by	<b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">text</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">said</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">div</a>



Example	<pre> &lt;body&gt; &lt;l&gt;Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;metudæs maecti end his modgidanc&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;eci dryctin or astelidæ&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;he aerist scop aelda barnum&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;heben til hrofe haleg scepen.&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;tha middungeard moncynnæs uard&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;eci dryctin æfter tiadæ&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;firum foldu frea allmectig&lt;/l&gt; &lt;trailer&gt;primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.&lt;/trailer&gt; &lt;/body&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.div1Like"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.common"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.div1Like"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divBottom"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element body {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declaring.attributes,   (     model.global*,     ( model.divTop, ( model.global   model.divTop )* )?,     ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )?,     (       ( model.divLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+         ( model.divlLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+         (           ( model.common, model.global* )+,           (             ( model.divLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+               ( model.divlLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+           )?         )       ),     ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*   ) } </pre>
---------------------------	--

### 2.1.9. <cRefPattern>

<b>&lt;cRefPattern&gt;</b> (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.patternReplacement</a> (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">refsDecl</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a>
<b>Note</b>	The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of <i>xml:base</i> in force at the place where the <i>cRef</i> attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;cRefPattern matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z]+)\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='\$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='\$2']/div[@type='verse'][@n='\$3'])" </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element cRefPattern {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.patternReplacement.attributes,   model.pLike* } </pre>

## 2.1.10. <cb>

<cb> (Saut de colonne) [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break) <a href="#">att.global</a> (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">text</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	On this element, the global <i>n</i> attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.
<b>Example</b>	<p>Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:</p> <pre>&lt;pb/&gt; &lt;cb n="1"/&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;   &lt;form&gt;Well&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;a Pit to hold Spring-Water&lt;/sense&gt;:   &lt;sense&gt;In the Art of &lt;hi rend="italic"&gt;War&lt;/hi&gt;, a Depth the Miner     sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,     or to prepare one&lt;/sense&gt;. &lt;/entryFree&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;To &lt;form&gt;Welter&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;to wallow&lt;/sense&gt;, or &lt;sense&gt;lie groveling&lt;/sense&gt;.&lt;/entryFree&gt; &lt;!-- remainder of column --&gt; &lt;cb n="2"/&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;   &lt;form&gt;Wey&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;the greatest Measure for dry Things,     containing five Chaldron&lt;/sense&gt;. &lt;/entryFree&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;   &lt;form&gt;Whale&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;the greatest of     Sea-Fishes&lt;/sense&gt;. &lt;/entryFree&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element cb {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,</pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.edition.attributes, att.spanning.attributes, att.breaking.attributes, attribute n { text }, empty } </pre>
--	---

### 2.1.11. <choice>

<b>&lt;choice&gt;</b> (Choix) permet d'encoder des alternatives. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.pPart.editorial</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>expan</u> <u>orig</u> <u>reg</u> <u>sic</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Because the children of a &lt;choice&gt; element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.</p> <p>Note also that &lt;choice&gt; elements may self-nest.</p> <p>Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the &lt;app&gt; element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>An American encoding of <i>Gulliver's Travels</i> which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.</p> <pre> &lt;p&gt;Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient for the support of &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;sic&gt;1724&lt;/sic&gt;   &lt;corr&gt;1728&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; of our subjects, with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;favour&lt;/orig&gt;   &lt;reg&gt;favor&lt;/reg&gt; &lt;/choice&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="2"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.choicePart"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="choice"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element choice {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.analytic.attribute.ana, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, ( model.choicePart   choice )+ } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.12. <corr>

<b>&lt;corr&gt;</b> (Correction) permet de signaler les corrections apportées au texte [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @sub-type)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> add <b>are:</b> del</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.choicePart</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <a href="#">&lt;corr&gt;</a> may be used alone:</p> <pre> I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how &lt;corr&gt;can we&lt;/corr&gt; prove or disprove anyone's theories? </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>It is also possible, using the <a href="#">&lt;choice&gt;</a> and <a href="#">&lt;sic&gt;</a> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:</p> <pre> I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how &lt;choice&gt; &lt;sic&gt;we can&lt;/sic&gt; &lt;corr&gt;can we&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; prove or </pre>

	disprove anyone's theories?
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element corr {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { "add"   "del" }?,   macro.paraContent } </pre>

### 2.1.13. <country>

<country> contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.dateable</a> (@calendar, @period) (<a href="#">att.dateable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<a href="#">att.dateable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<a href="#">att.dateable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (ref, @key) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> pays civil- i- sa- tion</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p>

	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;country key="DK"&gt;Denmark&lt;/country&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element country {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.naming.attribute.role,   att.naming.attribute.nymRef,   att.canonical.attribute.key,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.datable.attributes,   attribute type { "pays"   "civilisation" }?,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.14. <date>

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref) <a href="#">att.datable</a> (@calendar, @period) ( <a href="#">att.datable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <a href="#">att.datable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <a href="#">att.datable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @dating-Method)) <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dimensions</a> (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.dateLike</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a>

	<b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date when="1980-02"&gt;early February 1980&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	Given on the <code>&lt;date when="1977-06-12"&gt;Twelfth Day</code> of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth. <code>&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date when="1990-09"&gt;September 1990&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element date {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.canonical.attributes,   att.datable.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,   att.dimensions.attribute.extent,   att.dimensions.attribute.precision,   att.dimensions.attribute.scope,   att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,   att.ranging.attribute.atMost,   att.ranging.attribute.min,   att.ranging.attribute.max,   att.ranging.attribute.confidence,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   ( text   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.global ) * } </pre>

## 2.1.15. <death>

<b>&lt;death&gt;</b> contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.datable</u> (@calendar, @period) (<u>att.datable.w3c</u> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<u>att.datable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<u>att.datable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <u>att.dimensions</u> (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (<u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) (<u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref)) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.typed</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p>



	<p><b>Sample values include:</b></p> <p>pro-claimed as-sumed ver-i-fied clin-i-cal brain nat-ur-al un-nat-ur-al frag-men-ta-tion dis-so-lu-tion</p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute is not intended to express the cause of death.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.personPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<u>namesdates: person</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u></p> <p><b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>idno</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;death when="1902-10-01"/&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;death when="1960-12-10"&gt;Passed away near &lt;name type="place"&gt;Aix-la-Chapelle&lt;/name&gt;, after suffering from cereb</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element death {   att.dataable.attributes,   att.dimensions.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.global.attributes,   att.naming.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { text }?,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.16. <del>

<del> (Suppression) permet de signaler les endroits supprimés par le copiste [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.transcriptional</a> (@status, @cause, @seq) (<a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence)) (<a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand)) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype) <a href="#">att.dimensions</a> (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <a href="#">ex-</a> <a href="#">ponc-</a> <a href="#">tué</a> <a href="#">raturé</a></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The &lt;delSpan&gt; element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.</p> <p>The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a &lt;supplied&gt; tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the &lt;gap&gt; tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the &lt;gap&gt; element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the &lt;unclear&gt; element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.</p> <p>Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the &lt;certainty&gt; element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).</p> <p>There is a clear distinction in the TEI between &lt;del&gt; and &lt;surplus&gt; on the one hand and &lt;gap&gt; or &lt;unclear&gt; on the other. &lt;del&gt; indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text.</p>

	<p>&lt;surplus&gt; indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. &lt;gap&gt; or &lt;unclear&gt;, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.</p>
Example	<pre>&lt;l&gt; &lt;del rend="overtyped"&gt;Mein&lt;/del&gt; Frisch &lt;del rend="overstrike" type="primary"&gt;schwebt&lt;/del&gt; weht der Wind &lt;/l&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;del rend="overstrike"&gt; &lt;gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/&gt; &lt;/del&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element del {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.transcriptional.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,   att.dimensions.attribute.extent,   att.dimensions.attribute.precision,   att.dimensions.attribute.scope,   att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,   att.ranging.attribute.atMost,   att.ranging.attribute.min,   att.ranging.attribute.max,   att.ranging.attribute.confidence,   attribute type { "exponctu��"   "ratur��" }?,   macro.paraContent }</pre>

## 2.1.17. <div>

<div> (Divisions principales) permet de structurer les diff��rents ��l��ments du texte. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global-linking</a> (@corresp) <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p>

	<p><b>Legal values</b> <b>chapter</b> (Chapitre) signale les divisions de premier niveau.</p> <p><b>section</b> (Section) signale les divisions de deuxième niveau.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<code>model.divLike</code>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>textcrit:</b> <code>lem rdg</code></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <code>body div</code></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <code>bibl cb head l lb lg listBibl note p pb said</code></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <code>msDesc</code></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <code>listPerson listPlace</code></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <code>app listWit</code></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <code>div</code></p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;body&gt;   &lt;div type="part"&gt;     &lt;head&gt;Fallacies of Authority&lt;/head&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all       exercise of the reasoning faculty.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;div n="1" type="chapter"&gt;       &lt;head&gt;The Nature of Authority&lt;/head&gt;       &lt;p&gt;With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest         happiness of the greatest number [...]&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;div n="1.1" type="section"&gt;         &lt;head&gt;Analysis of Authority&lt;/head&gt;         &lt;p&gt;What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to           authority [...]&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;       &lt;div n="1.2" type="section"&gt;         &lt;head&gt;Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.&lt;/head&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...]&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;     &lt;/div&gt;   &lt;/div&gt; &lt;/body&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;s:rule context="tei:div[@n]"&gt; &lt;s:assert test="number(@n) = number(preceding-sib- ling::tei:div[1]/@n) + 1 or count(preceding-sibling::tei:div[1]/@n) = 0"&gt; value of @n is wrong &lt;/s:assert&gt; &lt;/s:rule&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;s:rule context="tei:div[@type='chapter']"&gt; &lt;s:assert test="tei:div[@type='section']"&gt; di- v[@type='chapter'] includes only div[@type='section'] &lt;/s:assert&gt; &lt;/s:rule&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;s:rule context="tei:div[@type='section']"&gt; &lt;s:assert test="(tei:p or tei:lg) and not(tei:div)"&gt; div[@type='section'] only includes p or lg &lt;/s:assert&gt; &lt;/s:rule&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"&gt; Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-lev- el structural elements such as div. &lt;/s:report&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"&gt; Ab- stract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. &lt;/s:report&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;         &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"           maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;           &lt;/alternate&gt;           &lt;classRef key="model.global"             minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/sequence&gt;         &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;           &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" </pre>

	<pre> maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.common"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divBottom"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element div {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.facs.attribute.facs,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.written.attributes,   attribute n { text },   attribute type { "chapter"   "section" },   (     ( model.divTop   model.global )*,     (       (         ( ( model.divLike   model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+           (           ( model.common, model.global* )+,           ( ( model.divLike   model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*         )       ),       ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*     )?   ) } </pre>

### 2.1.18. <encodingDesc>

<b>&lt;encodingDesc&gt;</b> (Description de l'encodage) donne des informations sur les méthodes de structuration du fichier XML. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
Member of	<u>model.teiHeaderPart</u>
Contained by	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>header:</b> <u>projectDesc</u> <u>refsDecl</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>variantEncoding</u>
Example	<pre> &lt;encodingDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No </pre>

	<pre> formatting or layout information preserved.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element encodingDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.encodingDescPart   model.pLike )+ } </pre>

## 2.1.19. <ex>

<b>&lt;ex&gt;</b> (Développement) contient les éléments ajoutés de la forme développée d'une abréviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]	
<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dimensions</u> (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) <u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.choicePart</u> <u>model.pPart.editorial</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>May contain</b>	Character data only
<b>Example</b>	<pre> The address is Southmoor &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;expan&gt;R&lt;ex&gt;oa&lt;/ex&gt;d&lt;/expan&gt;   &lt;abbr&gt;Rd&lt;/abbr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.xtext"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element ex {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, } </pre>

	<pre> att.global.source.attribute.source, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.precision, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.ranging.attribute.atLeast, att.ranging.attribute.atMost, att.ranging.attribute.min, att.ranging.attribute.max, att.ranging.attribute.confidence, macro.xtext } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.20. <expan>

<expan> (Développement) contient la forme développée de l'abréviation. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.choicePart</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The &lt;ex&gt; element provided by the <a href="#">transcr</a> module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.</p> <p>If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the &lt;editorialDecl&gt;, either with a &lt;normalization&gt; element or a &lt;p&gt;.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> The address is Southmoor &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;expan&gt;Road&lt;/expan&gt;   &lt;abbr&gt;Rd&lt;/abbr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;choice xml:lang="la"&gt;   &lt;abbr&gt;Imp&lt;/abbr&gt;   &lt;expan&gt;Imp&lt;ex&gt;erator&lt;/ex&gt; &lt;/expan&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element expan {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.editLike.attributes, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.21. <explicit>

<explicit> contains the <i>explicit</i> of a item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.msExcerpt</u> (@defective) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
Member of	<u>model.biblPart</u>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msItemStruct</u>
May contain	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
Example	<pre> &lt;explicit&gt;sed libera nos a malo.&lt;/explicit&gt; &lt;rubric&gt;Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.&lt;/rubric&gt; &lt;explicit type="defective"&gt;ex materia quasi et forma sibi proporti&lt;gap/&gt; &lt;/explicit&gt; &lt;explicit type="reverse"&gt;saued be shulle that doome of day the at &lt;/explicit&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element explicit {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.22. <extent>

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]	
Module	header



<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>supportDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;extent&gt;3200 sentences&lt;/extent&gt; &lt;extent&gt;between 10 and 20 Mb&lt;/extent&gt; &lt;extent&gt;ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes&lt;/extent&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The &lt;measure&gt; element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.</p> <pre>&lt;extent&gt;   &lt;measure unit="MiB" quantity="4.2"&gt;About four megabytes&lt;/measure&gt;   &lt;measure unit="pages" quantity="245"&gt;245 pages of source     material&lt;/measure&gt; &lt;/extent&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element extent {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### 2.1.23. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (Description du fichier) permet de donner les informations générales sur le fichier : son créateur, son sujet, le document source. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>Note</b>	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;fileDesc&gt;   &lt;titleStmt&gt;     &lt;title&gt;The shortest possible TEI document&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;/titleStmt&gt;   &lt;publicationStmt&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Distributed as part of TEI P5&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;p&gt;No print source exists: this is an original digital text&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; &lt;/fileDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="titleStmt"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="editionStmt"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="publicationStmt"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="seriesStmt"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="notesStmt"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="sourceDesc"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element fileDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   (     (       titleStmt,       editionStmt?,       extent?,       publicationStmt,       seriesStmt*,       notesStmt?     ),     sourceDesc+   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.24. <foliation>

<p><b>&lt;foliation&gt;</b> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex or similar object. [10.7.1.4. Foliation]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>supportDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> pc <b>core:</b> abbr bibl cb choice corr date del expan hi l lb lg listBibl note orig p pb ref reg rs said sic title <b>header:</b> idno <b>linking:</b> seg <b>msdescription:</b> height locus msDesc origDate width <b>namesdates:</b> country geo listPerson listPlace location persName placeName settlement surname <b>textcrit:</b> app listWit

	<b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;foliation&gt;Contemporary foliation in red roman numerals in the centre of the outer margin.&lt;/foliation&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<code>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</code>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element foliation {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.specialPara } </pre>

## 2.1.25. <geo>

<b>&lt;geo&gt;</b> (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) ( <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.measureLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>May contain</b>	Character data only
<b>Note</b>	Uses of <b>&lt;geo&gt;</b> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <b>&lt;geoDecl&gt;</b> element supplied in the TEI header, using the <i>decls</i> attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <b>&lt;geo&gt;</b> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;geoDecl xml:id="WGS" datum="WGS84"&gt;World Geodetic System&lt;/geoDecl&gt; &lt;geoDecl xml:id="OS" datum="OSGB36"&gt;Ordnance Survey&lt;/geoDecl&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;location&gt;   &lt;desc&gt;A tombstone plus six lines of     Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side     of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the     Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;geo decls="#WGS"&gt;53.226658 -0.541254&lt;/geo&gt;   &lt;geo decls="#OS"&gt;SK 97481 70947&lt;/geo&gt; &lt;/location&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;geo&gt;41.687142 -74.870109&lt;/geo&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element geo { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, text }</pre>
--------------------	--

## 2.1.26. <head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.placement</u> (@place) <u>att.written</u> (@hand) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
Member of	<u>model.headLike</u>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <u>lg listBibl</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>place</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>listWit</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
May contain	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sur-name</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
Note	The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.
Example	<p>The most common use for the &lt;head&gt; element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or <i>incipits</i> may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a &lt;trailer&gt;, as in this example:</p> <pre>&lt;div1 n="I" type="book"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of     Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;div2 type="section"&gt;     &lt;head&gt;In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.&lt;/head&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Proposing as I do ...&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve       years passed.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;trailer&gt;Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six       years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.&lt;/trailer&gt;   &lt;/div2&gt; &lt;/div1&gt;</pre>
Example	<p>When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the <i>place</i> attribute.</p> <pre>&lt;div type="subsection"&gt;   &lt;head place="margin"&gt;Secunda conclusio&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;p&gt;     &lt;lb n="1251"/&gt;     &lt;hi rend="large"&gt;Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis&lt;supplied&gt;.&lt;/supplied&gt;     &lt;/hi&gt;     &lt;lb n="1252"/&gt;Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium     [...]   &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre>
Example	The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

	<p>With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. &lt;list rend="bulleted"&gt;</p> <pre> &lt;head&gt;Connectives&lt;/head&gt; &lt;item&gt;above&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;accordingly&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;across from&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;adjacent to&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;again&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="lg"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.lLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element head {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.placement.attributes,   att.written.attributes,   (     text       lg       model.gLike       model.phrase       model.inter       model.lLike       model.global   ) * } </pre>

## 2.1.27. <height>

<height> contains a measurement measured along the axis at a right angle to the bottom of the object. [10.3.4. Dimensions]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dimensions</u> (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) <u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p>unit names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.dimensions</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> mm <b>are:</b></p>
Member of	<u>model.measureLike</u>
Contained by	<p><b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u></p>

	<b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
May contain	Character data only
Example	<code>&lt;height unit="in" quantity="7"/&gt;</code>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.xtext"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element height {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,   att.dimensions.attribute.extent,   att.dimensions.attribute.precision,   att.dimensions.attribute.scope,   att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,   att.ranging.attribute.atMost,   att.ranging.attribute.min,   att.ranging.attribute.max,   att.ranging.attribute.confidence,   attribute unit { "mm" }?,   macro.xtext }</pre>

## 2.1.28. <hi>

<hi> (Mise en valeur) [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]	
Module	core
Attributes	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>rend</b> (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> rubricated, decorated, initial</p>

	<p>dec- o- rat- ed-ini- tial- blue</p> <p>orig reg ital- ic green ti- tle exp</p>
Member of	<a href="#">model.hiLike</a>
Contained by	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a></p>
May contain	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sur-</a> <a href="#">name</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre>&lt;hi rend="gothic"&gt;And this Indenture further witnesseth&lt;/hi&gt; that the said &lt;hi rend="italic"&gt;Walter Shandy&lt;/hi&gt;, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element hi {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.written.attributes,   attribute rend {   list   {     (       "rubricated"         "decorated-initial"         "decorated-initialblue"</pre>

	<pre>                 "orig"         "reg"         "italic"         "green"         "title"         "exp"             )+   } }, macro paraContent } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.29. <history>

<b>&lt;history&gt;</b> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.8. History]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;history&gt;   &lt;origin&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Written in Durham during the mid twelfth       century.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/origin&gt;   &lt;provenance&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Recorded in two medieval       catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and       1405.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/provenance&gt;   &lt;provenance&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)       and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)       according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/provenance&gt;   &lt;acquisition&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by       Thomas Gale and his son Roger.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/acquisition&gt; &lt;/history&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded" /&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="origin" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="provenance"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" /&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="acquisition"         minOccurs="0" /&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element history {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition? ) ) } </pre>



## 2.1.30. <idno>

<b>&lt;idno&gt;</b> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.dateable</u> (@calendar, @period) ( <u>att.dateable.w3c</u> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <u>att.dateable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <u>att.dateable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.nameLike</u> <u>model.personPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>idno</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>msIdentifier</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	<u>&lt;idno&gt;</u> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for <i>type</i> on <u>&lt;idno&gt;</u> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;idno type="ISBN"&gt;978-1-906964-22-1&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="ISSN"&gt;0143-3385&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="DOI"&gt;10.1000/123&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="URI"&gt;http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="URI"&gt;http://authority.nzetc.org/463/&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="LT"&gt;Thomason Tract E.537(17)&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="Wing"&gt;C695&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="oldCat"&gt;   &lt;g ref="#sym"/&gt;345 &lt;/idno&gt; </pre> <p>In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a &lt;glyph&gt; or &lt;char&gt; element referenced here as #sym.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element idno {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.sortable.attributes,   att.dateable.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   ( text   model.gLike   idno ) * } </pre>

## 2.1.31. <incipit>

<b>&lt;incipit&gt;</b> contains the <i>incipit</i> of a manuscript or similar object item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any <i>rubric</i> which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.msExcerpt</a> (@defective) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @sub-type)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;incipit&gt;Pater noster qui es in celis&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit defective="true"&gt;tatem dedit hominibus alleluia.&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit type="biblical"&gt;Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit&gt;O onghoerde gewerdighe christi&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit type="lemma"&gt;Firmiter&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit&gt;Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non potest&lt;/incipit&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element incipit {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.32. <l>

<l> (Vers) permet de signaler les vers. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.fragmentable</a> <a href="#">att.global</a> (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p>n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p>

	<b>Status</b> Required <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.ILike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>corr</u> <u>del</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lg</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/"&gt;Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?&lt;/l&gt;</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(../tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]"&gt; Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. &lt;/s:report&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element l {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.fragmentable.attributes,   attribute n { text },   ( text   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.inter   model.global ) * } </pre>

### 2.1.33. <layout>

<layout> describes how text is laid out on the page or surface of the object, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <b>columns</b> specifies the number of columns per page <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–2 occurrences of <u>teidata.count</u> separated by whitespace

	<p><b>Note</b> If a single number is given, all pages referenced have this number of columns. If two numbers are given, the number of columns per page varies between the values supplied. Where <i>columns</i> is omitted the number is assumed to be 1.</p> <p>Columns may be independent of page orientation or reading direction, and a single textual <i>stream</i> may have one or more columns.</p> <p><b>streams</b> (textual streams) indicates the number of streams per page, each of which contains an independent textual stream</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–2 occurrences of <code>teidata.count</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> If a single number is given, all pages referenced have this number of textual streams. If two numbers are given, the number of textual streams per page varies between the values supplied. Where <i>streams</i> is omitted the number is assumed to be 1 and unless specified elsewhere the script orientation of the source is identical to that used in the TEI document.</p> <p><b>writtenLines</b> specifies the number of written lines per column</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–2 occurrences of <code>teidata.count</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> If a single number is given, all columns have this number of written lines. If two numbers are given, the number of written lines per column varies between the values supplied.</p>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <code>layoutDesc</code>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <code>pc</code></p> <p><b>core:</b> <code>abbr bibl cb choice corr date del expan hi l lb lg listBibl note orig p pb ref reg rs said sic title</code></p> <p><b>header:</b> <code>idno</code></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <code>seg</code></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <code>height locus msDesc origDate width</code></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <code>country geo listPerson listPlace location persName placeName settlement surname</code></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <code>app listWit</code></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <code>ex</code></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32"&gt;Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.&lt;/layout&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule     between the columns.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule     between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of writing.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;layout streams="3" columns="3"/&gt; &lt;!-- Further down in document body --&gt; &lt;div type="page"&gt;   &lt;ab&gt;     &lt;pb/&gt;     ###&lt;cb type="top-stream"/&gt;     ###&lt;cb type="mid-stream"/&gt;     ###&lt;cb type="bottom-stream"/&gt;   &lt;/ab&gt;   &lt;!-- cb here for demo purposes --&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	

	<pre> element layout {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   attribute columns { list { ? } }?,   attribute streams { list { ? } }?,   attribute writtenLines { list { ? } }?,   macro.specialPara } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.34. <layoutDesc>

<layoutDesc> (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>objectDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> p <b>msdescription:</b> <u>layout</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;layoutDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;layoutDesc&gt; &lt;layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;     &lt;locus from="f12r" to="f15v"&gt;       2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with       central rule between the columns.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt; &lt;layout columns="3"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;     &lt;locus from="f16"/&gt;Prickings for three columns are visible.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt; &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="layout" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element layoutDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, layout+ ) ) } </pre>

## 2.1.35. <lb>

<lb> (Saut de ligne) [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">text</a>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	<p>By convention, &lt;lb&gt; elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The <i>n</i> attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next &lt;lb&gt; element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the &lt;l&gt; element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.</p> <p>The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes <i>break</i>, <i>ed</i>, or <i>edRef</i> should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:</p> <pre>&lt;l&gt;Of Mans First Disobedience,&lt;lb ed="1674"/&gt; and&lt;lb ed="1667"/&gt; the Fruit&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;Of that Forbidden Tree, whose&lt;lb ed="1667 1674"/&gt; mortal tast&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;Brought Death into the World,&lt;lb ed="1667"/&gt; and all&lt;lb ed="1674"/&gt; our woe,&lt;/l&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The <i>break</i> attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.</p> <pre>&lt;titlePart&gt; &lt;lb/&gt;With Additions, ne-&lt;lb break="no"/&gt;ver before Printed. &lt;/titlePart&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element lb {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.edition.attributes,   att.spanning.attributes,   att.breaking.attributes,   empty }</pre>

## 2.1.36. <lem>

<b>&lt;lem&gt;</b> (Lemme) permet de signaler la leçon choisie dans le texte édité. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) ( <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.textCritical</u> (@cause, @require) ( <u>att.written</u> (@hand)) <u>att.witnessed</u> (@wit)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sur-name</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>div</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	The term <i>lemma</i> is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text).
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;app&gt;   &lt;lem wit="#E1 #Hg"&gt;Experience&lt;/lem&gt;   &lt;rdg wit="#La" type="substantive"&gt;Experiment&lt;/rdg&gt;   &lt;rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive"&gt;Eryment&lt;/rdg&gt; &lt;/app&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divPart"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="titlePage"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="argument"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="byline"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="docAuthor"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="docDate"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="docEdition"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="docImprint"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="docTitle"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="epigraph"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="imprimatur"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="titlePart"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="epilogue"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="performance"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="prologue"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="set"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.rdgPart"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element lem {   att.global.attributes,   att.textCritical.attributes,   att.witnessed.attributes,   (     text       model.divLike       model.divPart   ) }</pre>

	<pre>   titlePage   argument   byline   docAuthor   docDate   docEdition   docImprint   docTitle   epigraph   imprimatur   titlePart   epilogue   performance   prologue   set   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.inter   model.global   model.rdgPart   ) * } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.37. <lg>

<lg> (Ensemble de vers) permet de regrouper entre eux des vers. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.global</a> (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @sub-type)</p> <p>n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">model.divPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a></p>
<b>Note</b>	contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;lg type="free"&gt;   &lt;l&gt;Let me be my own fool&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;l&gt;of my own making, the sum of it&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;lg type="free"&gt;   &lt;l&gt;is equivocal.&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;l&gt;One says of the drunken farmer:&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;lg type="free"&gt;   &lt;l&gt;leave him lay off it. And this is&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;l&gt;the explanation.&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:rule context="tei:lg[@n]"> <s:assert test="number(@n) = number(preceding::tei:lg[1]/@n) + 1 or count(preceding::tei:lg[1]/@n) = 0"> value of @n is wrong </s:assert> </s:rule>
<b>Schematron</b>	<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg descendant::tei:l descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert>



<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]"&gt; Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups. &lt;/s:report&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.lLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.stageLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="lg"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.lLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.stageLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="lg"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divBottom"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element lg {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.declaring.attributes,   attribute n { text },   (     ( model.divTop   model.global )*,     ( model.lLike   model.stageLike   model.labelLike   lg ),     ( model.lLike   model.stageLike   model.labelLike   model.global   lg )*,     ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.38. <licence>

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.pointing</a> (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) <a href="#">att.dataable</a> (@calendar, @period) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.availabilityPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a>

	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sur-name</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	A <a href="#">&lt;licence&gt;</a> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The <i>target</i> attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The <i>when</i> , <i>notBefore</i> , <i>notAfter</i> , <i>from</i> or <i>to</i> attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"&gt; Licence &lt;/licence&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;availability&gt; &lt;licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/" notBefore="2013-01-01"&gt; &lt;p&gt;The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The licence was added on January 1, 2013.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/licence&gt; &lt;/availability&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element licence {   att.global.attributes,   att.pointing.attributes,   att.data.attributes,   macro.specialPara }</pre>

Creative Commons At

## 2.1.39. <listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey) <a href="#">att.declarable</a> (@default) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (@type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;listBibl&gt; &lt;head&gt;Works consulted&lt;/head&gt; &lt;bibl&gt;Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;biblStruct&gt; &lt;analytic&gt; &lt;title&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt; &lt;/analytic&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;monogr&gt;   &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt;   &lt;imprint&gt;     &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt;     &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;/imprint&gt; &lt;/monogr&gt; &lt;/biblStruct&gt; &lt;/listBibl&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element listBibl {   att.global.attributes,   att.sortable.attributes,   att.declarable.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   (     model.headLike*,     desc*,     ( model.biblLike   model.milestoneLike )+,     ( relation   listRelation )*   ) } </pre>

### 2.1.40. <listPerson>

<p><b>&lt;listPerson&gt;</b> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @sub-type)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.listLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>corr</u> <u>del</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>corpus:</b> <u>particDesc</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPerson</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>head</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPerson</u> <u>person</u>
<b>Note</b>	The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listPerson type="respondents"&gt;   &lt;personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/&gt;   &lt;person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/&gt;   &lt;person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/&gt; &lt;/listPerson&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/&gt; &lt;/listRelation&gt; &lt;/listPerson&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.personLike"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="listPerson"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;elementRef key="relation"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element listPerson {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.sortable.attributes,   (     model.headLike*,     desc*,     ( model.personLike   listPerson )+,     ( relation   listRelation )*   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.41. <listPlace>

<b>&lt;listPlace&gt;</b> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.listLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>corr</u> <u>del</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>corpus:</b> <u>settingDesc</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPlace</u> <u>place</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>head</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPlace</u> <u>place</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listPlace type="offshoreIslands"&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;placeName&gt;La roche qui pleure&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;/place&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;placeName&gt;Ile aux cerfs&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;/place&gt; &lt;/listPlace&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;/place&gt; &lt;/listPlace&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element listPlace {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.sortable.attributes,   (     model.headLike*,     desc*,     ( model.placeLike   listPlace )+,     ( relation   listRelation )*   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.42. <listWit>

**<listWit>** (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]

<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) ( <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.listLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>corr</u> <u>del</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>head</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>listWit</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>Note</b>	May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements. The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus. Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witS-start> and <witEnd> elements described in section 12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses.

	Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <code>&lt;listWit&gt;</code> element.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listWit&gt;   &lt;witness xml:id="HL26"&gt;Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9&lt;/witness&gt;   &lt;witness xml:id="PN392"&gt;Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,     Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D&lt;/witness&gt;   &lt;witness xml:id="RP149"&gt;Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149     (see further &lt;ptr target="#MSRP149"/&gt;)&lt;/witness&gt; &lt;/listWit&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="witness"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listWit"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element listWit {   att.global.attributes,   att.sortable.attributes,   ( model.headLike?, desc*, ( witness   listWit )+ ) } </pre>

### 2.1.43. `<location>`

<code>&lt;location&gt;</code> defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [13.3.4. Places]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <code>att.global</code> ( <code>@xml:id</code> , <code>@n</code> , <code>@xml:lang</code> , <code>@xml:base</code> , <code>@xml:space</code> ) ( <code>att.global.rendition</code> ( <code>@rend</code> , <code>@style</code> , <code>@rendition</code> )) ( <code>att.global.linking</code> ( <code>@corresp</code> )) ( <code>att.global.analytic</code> ( <code>@ana</code> )) ( <code>att.global.facs</code> ( <code>@facs</code> )) ( <code>att.global.change</code> ( <code>@change</code> )) ( <code>att.global.responsibility</code> ( <code>@cert</code> , <code>@resp</code> )) ( <code>att.global.source</code> ( <code>@source</code> )) <code>att.typed</code> ( <code>@type</code> , <code>@subtype</code> ) <code>att.dataable</code> ( <code>@calendar</code> , <code>@period</code> ) ( <code>att.dataable.w3c</code> ( <code>@when</code> , <code>@notBefore</code> , <code>@notAfter</code> , <code>@from</code> , <code>@to</code> )) ( <code>att.dataable.iso</code> ( <code>@when-iso</code> , <code>@notBefore-iso</code> , <code>@notAfter-iso</code> , <code>@from-iso</code> , <code>@to-iso</code> )) ( <code>att.dataable.custom</code> ( <code>@when-custom</code> , <code>@notBefore-custom</code> , <code>@notAfter-custom</code> , <code>@from-custom</code> , <code>@to-custom</code> , <code>@datingPoint</code> , <code>@datingMethod</code> )) <code>att.editLike</code> ( <code>@evidence</code> )
<b>Member of</b>	<code>model.placeStateLike</code>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <code>abbr</code> <code>author</code> <code>bibl</code> <code>corr</code> <code>date</code> <code>del</code> <code>expan</code> <code>head</code> <code>hi</code> <code>l</code> <code>note</code> <code>orig</code> <code>p</code> <code>pubPlace</code> <code>publisher</code> <code>ref</code> <code>reg</code> <code>rs</code> <code>said</code> <code>sic</code> <code>title</code> <b>header:</b> <code>extent</code> <code>licence</code> <code>scriptNote</code> <b>linking:</b> <code>seg</code> <b>msdescription:</b> <code>explicit</code> <code>foliation</code> <code>incipit</code> <code>layout</code> <code>origDate</code> <code>origin</code> <code>provenance</code> <code>repository</code> <code>support</code> <b>namesdates:</b> <code>birth</code> <code>country</code> <code>death</code> <code>persName</code> <code>place</code> <code>placeName</code> <code>settlement</code> <code>surname</code> <b>textcrit:</b> <code>lem</code> <code>rdg</code> <code>witness</code>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <code>bibl</code> <code>listBibl</code> <code>note</code> <b>msdescription:</b> <code>height</code> <code>msDesc</code> <code>width</code> <b>namesdates:</b> <code>country</code> <code>geo</code> <code>placeName</code> <code>settlement</code>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;place&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;Abbey Dore&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;location&gt;     &lt;geo&gt;51.969604 -2.893146&lt;/geo&gt;   &lt;/location&gt; &lt;/place&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;place xml:id="BGbuilding" type="building"&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;Brasserie Georges&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;location&gt;     &lt;country key="FR"/&gt;     &lt;settlement type="city"&gt;Lyon&lt;/settlement&gt;     &lt;district type="arrondissement"&gt;IIème&lt;/district&gt;     &lt;district type="quartier"&gt;Perrache&lt;/district&gt;   &lt;/location&gt; &lt;/place&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;placeName type="street"&gt;   &lt;num&gt;30&lt;/num&gt;, Cours de Verdun&lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/location&gt; &lt;/place&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;place type="imaginary"&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;Atlantis&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;location&gt;     &lt;offset&gt;beyond&lt;/offset&gt;     &lt;placeName&gt;The Pillars of &lt;persName&gt;Hercules&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;/location&gt; &lt;/place&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="precision"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.offsetLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.measureLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.addressLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element location {   att.global.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   att.dateable.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,   (     precision       model.labelLike       model.placeNamePart       model.offsetLike       model.measureLike       model.addressLike       model.noteLike       model.biblLike   )* } </pre>

## 2.1.44. <locus>

<p><b>&lt;locus&gt;</b> defines a location within a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object typically as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <i>att.typed</i> (@type, @subtype) <i>att.global</i> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <i>att.global.rendition</i> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <i>att.global.change</i> (@change) <i>att.global.responsibility</i> (@cert, @resp) <i>att.global.source</i> (@source) <i>att.pointing</i> (target, @targetLang, @evaluate)
<b>Member of</b>	<i>model.pPart.msdesc</i>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <i>abbr</i> <i>author</i> <i>corr</i> <i>date</i> <i>del</i> <i>expan</i> <i>head</i> <i>hi</i> <i>l</i> <i>note</i> <i>orig</i> <i>p</i> <i>pubPlace</i> <i>publisher</i> <i>ref</i> <i>reg</i> <i>rs</i> <i>said</i> <i>sic</i> <i>title</i> <b>header:</b> <i>extent</i> <i>licence</i> <i>scriptNote</i> <b>linking:</b> <i>seg</i> <b>msdescription:</b> <i>explicit</i> <i>foliation</i> <i>incipit</i> <i>layout</i> <i>locus</i> <i>msItemStruct</i> <i>origDate</i> <i>origin</i> <i>provenance</i> <i>repository</i> <i>support</i> <b>namesdates:</b> <i>birth</i> <i>country</i> <i>death</i> <i>persName</i> <i>placeName</i> <i>settlement</i> <i>surname</i> <b>textcrit:</b> <i>lem</i> <i>rdg</i> <i>witness</i>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <i>hi</i> <b>msdescription:</b> <i>locus</i> character data
<b>Note</b>	The <i>target</i> attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a <i>&lt;locus&gt;</i> element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global <i>facsimile</i> attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the <i>target</i> attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The <i>facsimile</i> attribute may be used to indicate one or

	<p>more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <code>&lt;surface&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;zone&gt;</code> element, <code>&lt;graphic&gt;</code>, or <code>&lt;binaryObject&gt;</code> elements.</p> <p>When a single page is being cited, use the <i>from</i> and <i>to</i> attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the <i>from</i> attribute may be used without <i>to</i>; for example a citation such as ‘p. 3ff’ might be encoded <code>&lt;biblScope from="3"&gt;p. 3ff&lt;/biblScope&gt;</code>.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;!-- within ms description --&gt;&lt;msItem n="1"&gt;   &lt;locus target="#Flr #Flv #F2r" from="1r"     to="2r"&gt;ff. 1r-2r&lt;/locus&gt;   &lt;author&gt;Ben Jonson&lt;/author&gt;   &lt;title&gt;Ode to himself&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;rubric rend="italics"&gt; An Ode&lt;/rubric&gt;   &lt;incipit&gt;Com leaue the loathed stage&lt;/incipit&gt;   &lt;explicit&gt;And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.&lt;/explicit&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;name&gt;Beal&lt;/name&gt;, &lt;title&gt;Index 1450-1625&lt;/title&gt;, JnB 380&lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt; &lt;!-- within transcription ... --&gt; &lt;pb xml:id="Flr"/&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;pb xml:id="Flv"/&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;pb xml:id="F2r"/&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The <i>fac</i>s attribute is available globally when the <i>transcr</i> module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:</p> <pre> &lt;msItem&gt;   &lt;locus facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg images/10v.jpg"&gt;fol. 8v-10v&lt;/locus&gt;   &lt;title&gt;Birds Praise of Love&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;biblScope&gt;1506&lt;/biblScope&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/msItem&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="hi"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="locus"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element locus {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,   att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,   att.typed.attributes,   ( text   model.gLike   hi   locus ) * } </pre>

## 2.1.45. <msContents>

<b>&lt;msContents&gt;</b> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [10.6. Intellectual Content]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <code>att.msExcerpt</code> (@defective) <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <code>att.global.change</code> (@change) <code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp) <code>att.global.source</code> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <code>msDesc</code>



<b>May contain</b>	<b>core: p</b> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msItemStruct</u>
<b>Note</b>	Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;msContents class="#sermons"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;A collection of Lollard sermons&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/msContents&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;msContents&gt;   &lt;msItem n="1"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 5r-7v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;An ABC&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;239&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="2"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 7v-8v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title xml:lang="frm"&gt;Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;3747&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="3"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fol. 8v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;Truth&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;809&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="4"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 8v-10v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;Birds Praise of Love&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;1506&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="5"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 10v-11v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title xml:lang="la"&gt;De amico ad amicum&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;title xml:lang="la"&gt;Responcio&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;16 &amp; 19&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="6"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 14r-126v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;Troilus and Criseyde&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;note&gt;Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation throughout&lt;/note&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt; &lt;/msContents&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="titlePage"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="msItem"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="msItemStruct"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element msContents {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,</pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.msExcerpt.attributes, (   model.pLike+     ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem   msItemStruct ) * ) ) } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.46. <msDesc>

<b>&lt;msDesc&gt;</b> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object such as early printed books. [10.1. Overview]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey) <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.docStatus</a> (@status) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">p</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a>
<b>Note</b>	Although the <msDesc> has primarily been designed with a view to encoding manuscript descriptions, it may also be used for other objects such as early printed books, fascicles, epigraphs, or any text-bearing objects that require substantial description. If an object is not text-bearing or the reasons for describing the object is not primarily the textual content, the more general <object> may be more suitable.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msDesc&gt;   &lt;msIdentifier&gt;     &lt;settlement&gt;Oxford&lt;/settlement&gt;     &lt;repository&gt;Bodleian Library&lt;/repository&gt;     &lt;idno type="Bod"&gt;MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.&lt;/idno&gt;   &lt;/msIdentifier&gt;   &lt;msContents&gt;     &lt;msItem&gt;       &lt;author&gt;Geoffrey Chaucer&lt;/author&gt;       &lt;title&gt;The Canterbury Tales&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;/msContents&gt;   &lt;physDesc&gt;     &lt;objectDesc&gt;       &lt;p&gt;A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx         28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;p&gt;The pages are margined and ruled throughout.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44         folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the         remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/objectDesc&gt;   &lt;/physDesc&gt; &lt;/msDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="msIdentifier"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="msContents"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="physDesc"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="additional" minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element msDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.sortable.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.docStatus.attributes,   (     msIdentifier,     model.headLike*,     (       model.pLike+         (         msContents?,         physDesc?,         history?,         additional?,         ( msPart*   msFrag* )       )     )   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.47. <msIdentifier>

<b>&lt;msIdentifier&gt;</b> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>repository</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msIdentifier&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;San Marino&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;repository&gt;Huntington Library&lt;/repository&gt;   &lt;idno&gt;MS.E1.26.C.9&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;/msIdentifier&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.</s:report>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;classRef key="model.placeNamePart"   expand="sequenceOptional"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="institution"   minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="repository"   minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="collection"   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="msName"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="objectName"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="altIdentifier"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element msIdentifier {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   (     (       placeName?,       country?,       settlement?,       institution?,       repository?,       collection*,       idno*     ),     ( msName   objectName   altIdentifier ) *   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.48. <msItemStruct>

<b>&lt;msItemStruct&gt;</b> (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.msExcerpt</a> (@defective) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msItemStruct n="2" defective="false"   class="#biblComm"&gt;   &lt;locus from="24v" to="97v"&gt;24v-97v&lt;/locus&gt;   &lt;author&gt;Apringius de Beja&lt;/author&gt;   &lt;title type="uniform" xml:lang="la"&gt;Tractatus in Apocalypsin&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;rubric&gt;Incipit Trac&lt;supplied reason="omitted"&gt;ta&lt;/supplied&gt;tus     in apoka&lt;lb/&gt;lipsin eruditissimi uiri &lt;lb/&gt; Apringi ep&lt;ex&gt;iscop&lt;/ex&gt;i     Pacensis eccl&lt;ex&gt;esi&lt;/ex&gt;e&lt;/rubric&gt;   &lt;finalRubric&gt;EXPLIC&lt;ex&gt;IT&lt;/ex&gt; EXPO&lt;lb/&gt;SITIO APOCALIPSIS     QVA&lt;ex&gt;M&lt;/ex&gt; EXPOSUIT DOM&lt;lb/&gt;NVS APRINGIUS EP&lt;ex&gt;ISCOPU&lt;/ex&gt;S.     DEO GR&lt;ex&gt;ACI&lt;/ex&gt;AS AGO. FI&lt;lb/&gt;NITO LABORE ISTO.&lt;/finalRubric&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900"&gt;Apringius&lt;/ref&gt;, ed. Férotin&lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;textLang mainLang="la"&gt;Latin&lt;/textLang&gt; &lt;/msItemStruct&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="locus"/&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;elementRef key="locusGrp"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="author" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="respStmt"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="title" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="rubric" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="incipit" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="msItemStruct"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="explicit"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="finalRubric"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="colophon"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="decoNote"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="listBibl"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="bibl"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="biblStruct"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="filiation"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="textLang"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element msItemStruct {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   (     ( locus   locusGrp )?,     (       model.pLike+         (         author*,         respStmt*,         title*,         rubric?,         incipit?,         msItemStruct*,         explicit?,         finalRubric?,         colophon*,         decoNote*,         listBibl*,         ( bibl   biblStruct )*,         filiation?,         model.noteLike*,         textLang?       )     )   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.49. <note>

**<note>** contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.placement</a> (@place) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.pointing</a> (target, @targetLang, @evaluate) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> bi-o-graph-i-cal</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.noteLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">text</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":</p> <pre> And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly &lt;note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"&gt; &lt;term xml:lang="de"&gt;Malerisch&lt;/term&gt;. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as &lt;mentioned&gt;picturesque&lt;/mentioned&gt; and &lt;mentioned&gt;painterly&lt;/mentioned&gt; respectively. &lt;/note&gt; style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.  &lt;!-- elsewhere in the document --&gt; &lt;respStmt xml:id="MDMH"&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;translation from German to English&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; </pre> <p>For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.</p>

<b>Example</b>	<p>The global <i>n</i> attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:</p> <pre> Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, &lt;note n="126" anchored="true"&gt; The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. &lt;/note&gt; is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. </pre> <p>However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element note {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.placement.attributes,   att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,   att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.written.attributes,   attribute type { "biographical" }?,   macro.specialPara } </pre>

### 2.1.50. <objectDesc>

<objectDesc> contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	model.physDescPart
<b>Contained by</b>	msdescription: physDesc
<b>May contain</b>	core: p msdescription: layoutDesc supportDesc
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;objectDesc form="codex"&gt;   &lt;supportDesc material="mixed"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Early modern     &lt;material&gt;parchment&lt;/material&gt; and     &lt;material&gt;paper&lt;/material&gt;.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/supportDesc&gt;   &lt;layoutDesc&gt;     &lt;layout ruledLines="25 32"/&gt;   &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; &lt;/objectDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="supportDesc"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="layoutDesc"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element objectDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( supportDesc?, layoutDesc? ) ) } </pre>
---------------------------	--

## 2.1.51. <orig>

<b>&lt;orig&gt;</b> (Original) permet d'encoder la forme originale du manuscrit. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.choicePart</u> <u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, &lt;orig&gt; may be used alone:</p> <pre> &lt;l&gt;But this will be a &lt;orig&gt;meere&lt;/orig&gt; confusion&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;And hardly shall we all be &lt;orig&gt;vnderstoode&lt;/orig&gt; &lt;/l&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>More usually, an &lt;orig&gt; will be combined with a regularized form within a &lt;choice&gt; element:</p> <pre> &lt;l&gt;But this will be a &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;meere&lt;/orig&gt;   &lt;reg&gt;mere&lt;/reg&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; confusion&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;And hardly shall we all be &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;vnderstoode&lt;/orig&gt;   &lt;reg&gt;understood&lt;/reg&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; &lt;/l&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>



<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element orig {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.paraContent } </pre>
---------------------------	---

## 2.1.52. <origDate>

**<origDate>** (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination]

<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.dataable</a> (@calendar, @period) (<a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dimensions</a> (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;origDate notBefore="-0300" notAfter="-0200"&gt;3rd century BCE&lt;/origDate&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element origDate {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.datable.attributes, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.precision, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.ranging.attribute.atLeast, att.ranging.attribute.atMost, att.ranging.attribute.min, att.ranging.attribute.max, att.ranging.attribute.confidence, att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, ( text   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.global )* } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.53. <origin>

<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.8. History]

<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.datable</a> (@calendar, @period) ( <a href="#">att.datable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <a href="#">att.datable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <a href="#">att.datable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @dating-Method)) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">history</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;origin notBefore="1802" notAfter="1845" evidence="internal" resp="#AMH"&gt;Copied in &lt;name type="origPlace"&gt;Derby&lt;/name&gt;, probably from an old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to &lt;persName xml:id="AMH"&gt;Anne-Mette Hansen&lt;/persName&gt;. &lt;/origin&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element origin {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.editLike.attributes, </pre>

	<pre> att.datable.attributes, macro.specialPara } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.54. <p>

<p> (Paragraphe) permet d'individualiser les paragraphes. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.fragmentableatt.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.pLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">said</a> <b>corpus:</b> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">cRefPattern</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">projectDesc</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">refsDecl</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;p&gt;Hallgerd was outside. &lt;q&gt;There is blood on your axe,&lt;/q&gt; she said. &lt;q&gt;What have you done?&lt;/q&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,&lt;/q&gt; replied Thjostolf. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,&lt;/q&gt; she said. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;Yes,&lt;/q&gt; said Thjostolf. &lt;q&gt;And now you must think up some plan for me.&lt;/q&gt; &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum  parent::tei:item  parent::tei:note  parent::tei:q  parent::tei:quote  parent::tei:remarks  parent::tei:said  parent::tei:sp  parent::tei:stage  parent::tei:cell  parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report>
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(../tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element p {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.declaring.attributes, att.fragmentable.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.55. <particDesc>

<b>&lt;particDesc&gt;</b> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]	
<b>Module</b>	corpus
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.profileDescPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">profileDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">person</a>
<b>Note</b>	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;particDesc&gt;   &lt;listPerson&gt;     &lt;person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid"&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Female informant, well-educated, born in         Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.         Socio-Economic status B2.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/person&gt;     &lt;person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1"&gt;       &lt;persName&gt;         &lt;surname&gt;Hancock&lt;/surname&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Anthony&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Aloysius&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;St John&lt;/forename&gt;       &lt;/persName&gt;       &lt;residence notAfter="1959"&gt;         &lt;address&gt;           &lt;street&gt;Railway Cuttings&lt;/street&gt;           &lt;settlement&gt;East Cheam&lt;/settlement&gt;         &lt;/address&gt;       &lt;/residence&gt;       &lt;occupation&gt;comedian&lt;/occupation&gt;     &lt;/person&gt;     &lt;listRelation&gt;       &lt;relation type="personal" name="spouse"         mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/&gt;     &lt;/listRelation&gt;   &lt;/listPerson&gt; &lt;/particDesc&gt; </pre> <p>This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.personLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listPerson"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listOrg"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element particDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n, </pre>

```

att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
att.global.change.attribute.change,
att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
att.global.source.attribute.source,
( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}

```

## 2.1.56. <pb>

<pb> (Saut de page) [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break) <a href="#">att.global</a> (n, @xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p><b>n</b> (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <p><b>facs</b> (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global.facs</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>
Member of	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
Contained by	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">text</a></p>
May contain	Empty element
Note	<p>A &lt;pb&gt; element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global <i>n</i> attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the &lt;pb&gt; element itself.</p> <p>The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes <i>break</i>, <i>ed</i>, or <i>edRef</i> should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.</p>
Example	<p>Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.</p> <pre> &lt;p&gt; ... &lt;pb n="145" ed="ed2"/&gt; &lt;!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --&gt; ... &lt;pb n="283" ed="ed1"/&gt; &lt;!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--&gt; ... &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
Example	<p>A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the <i>facs</i> attribute</p> <pre> &lt;body&gt; &lt;pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;       the text it contains is encoded here --&gt;  &lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/&gt; &lt;!-- similarly, for page 2 --&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/body&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element pb {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.edition.attributes,   att.spanning.attributes,   att.breaking.attributes,   attribute n { text },   attribute facs { list { + } },   empty } </pre>

## 2.1.57. <pc>

<pc> (Punctuation) [17.1.2. Below the Word Level 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]	
<b>Module</b>	analysis
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.segLike</a> (@function) (<a href="#">att.datcat</a> (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (<a href="#">att.fragmentable</a>) <a href="#">att.linguistic</a> (@lemma, @lemmaRef, @pos, @msd, @join) (<a href="#">att.lexicographic.normalized</a> (@norm, @orig)) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p><b>ana</b> (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the <i>ana</i> attribute appears.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> relative compleitive subordinate subcor</p>

co-  
or-  
di-  
na-  
tion  
su-  
jet  
COD  
COI  
CDN  
CDadj  
CC  
seg-  
Prep  
in-  
cise  
num-  
ber  
ap-  
po-  
si-  
tion  
DD  
fin-  
Phrase  
titre  
apos-  
tro-  
phe  
enu-  
mer-  
a-  
tion  
in-  
ten-  
sif  
mot  
abre-  
vi-  
a-  
tion  
ep-  
i-  
thete  
at-  
trib-  
ut  
in-  
ter-  
jec-  
tion

	<p><b>space</b></p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>orig</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> <b>reg</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.segLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">sic</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;phr&gt; &lt;w&gt;do&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w&gt;you&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w&gt;understand&lt;/w&gt; &lt;pc type="interrogative"&gt;?&lt;/pc&gt; &lt;/phr&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>Example encoding of the German sentence <i>Wir fahren in den Urlaub.</i>, encoded with attributes from <a href="#">att.linguistic</a> discussed in section .</p> <pre>&lt;s&gt; &lt;w pos="PPER" msd="1.Pl.*.Nom"&gt;Wir&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="VVFIN" msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind"&gt;fahren&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="APPR" msd="--"&gt;in&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="ART" msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg."&gt;den&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="NN" msd="Masc.Akk.Sg."&gt;Urlaub&lt;/w&gt; &lt;pc pos="\$. " msd="--" join="left"&gt;.&lt;/pc&gt; &lt;/s&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="c"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element pc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.segLike.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.linguistic.attributes,   attribute ana   {     list     {</pre>



	<pre> (   "relative"   "completive"   "subordonnee"   "subCorr"   "coordination"   "sujet"   "COD"   "COI"   "CDN"   "CDadj"   "CC"   "segPrep"   "incise"   "number"   "apposition"   "DD"   "finPhrase"   "titre"   "apostrophe"   "enumeration"   "intensif"   "mot"   "abreviation"   "epithete"   "attribut"   "interjection"   "space" )+ } }?, attribute type { "orig"   "reg" }?, ( text   model.gLike   c   model.pPart.edit )* } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.58. <persName>

<b>&lt;persName&gt;</b> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.dateable</a> (@calendar, @period) (<a href="#">att.dateable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<a href="#">att.dateable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<a href="#">att.dateable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.personal</a> (full, @sort) <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent</a> <a href="#">model.persStateLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;persName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;Edward&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;George&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname type="linked"&gt;Bulwer-Lytton&lt;/surname&gt;, &lt;roleName&gt;Baron Lytton of </pre>

	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt;Knebworth&lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/roleName&gt; &lt;/persName&gt;</pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre>&lt;s:rule context="tei:persName[@ref and ancestor::tei:body]"&gt; &lt;s:let name="ref" value="@ref"/&gt; &lt;s:assert test="//tei:person[@xml:id = substring-after(\$ref, '#')] and starts-with(\$ref, '#)"&gt; the value of #ref is not declared  &lt;s:value-of select="\$ref"/&gt;  &lt;/s:assert&gt; &lt;/s:rule&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element persName {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.datable.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.personal.attribute.sort,   att.naming.attribute.role,   att.naming.attribute.nymRef,   att.canonical.attribute.key,   att.canonical.attribute.ref,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.59. <person>

<b>&lt;person&gt;</b> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey) <a href="#">att.global</a> (xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p>xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> ID</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.personLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>corpus:</b> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">listPerson</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a>
<b>Note</b>	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the <a href="#">model.personPart</a> class.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person sex="F" age="adult"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French     status B2.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>

Example	<pre>&lt;person sex="intersex" role="god" age="immortal"&gt; &lt;persName&gt;Hermaphroditos&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;persName xml:lang="grc"&gt;##µ#####&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet"&gt; &lt;persName xml:lang="en"&gt;Ovid&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;persName xml:lang="la"&gt;Publius Ovidius Naso&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;birth when="-0044-03-20"&gt; 20 March 43 BC &lt;placeName&gt; &lt;settlement type="city"&gt;Sulmona&lt;/settlement&gt; &lt;country key="IT"&gt;Italy&lt;/country&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/birth&gt; &lt;death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018"&gt;17 or 18 AD &lt;placeName&gt; &lt;settlement type="city"&gt;Tomis (Constanta)&lt;/settlement&gt; &lt;country key="RO"&gt;Romania&lt;/country&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/death&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.personPart"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="ptr"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element person { att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.editLike.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, attribute xml:id { text }, ( model.pLike+   ( model.personPart   model.global   ptr )* ) }</pre>

## 2.1.60. <physDesc>

<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [10.7. Physical Description]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
Contained by	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> p <b>msdescription:</b> <u>objectDesc</u> <u>scriptDesc</u>
Example	<pre>&lt;physDesc&gt; &lt;objectDesc form="codex"&gt; &lt;supportDesc material="perg"&gt; &lt;support&gt;Parchment.&lt;/support&gt; &lt;extent&gt;i + 55 leaves &lt;dimensions scope="all" type="leaf" unit="inch"&gt; &lt;height&gt;7¼&lt;/height&gt; &lt;width&gt;5#&lt;/width&gt; &lt;/dimensions&gt; &lt;/extent&gt; &lt;/supportDesc&gt; &lt;layoutDesc&gt; &lt;layout columns="2"&gt;In double columns.&lt;/layout&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; &lt;/objectDesc&gt; &lt;handDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Written in more than one hand.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/handDesc&gt; &lt;decoDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;With a few coloured capitals.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/decoDesc&gt; &lt;/physDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.physDescPart"       expand="sequenceOptional"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element physDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike*, objectDesc?, scriptDesc? ) } </pre>

## 2.1.61. <place>

<place> contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey) <a href="#">att.global</a> (xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p>xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> ID</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.placeLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>corpus:</b> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">place</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;place&gt;   &lt;country&gt;Lithuania&lt;/country&gt;   &lt;country xml:lang="lt"&gt;Lietuva&lt;/country&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;settlement&gt;Vilnius&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;/place&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;settlement&gt;Kaunas&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;/place&gt; &lt;/place&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.eventLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="ptr"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="linkGrp"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="link"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element place {   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.sortable.attributes,   attribute xml:id { text },   (     model.headLike*,     (       model.pLike*         ( model.labelLike   model.placeStateLike   model.eventLike )*     ),     ( model.noteLike   model.biblLike   idno   ptr   linkGrp   link )*,     ( model.placeLike   listPlace )*   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.62. <placeName>

<placeName> contains an absolute or relative place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.dataable</a> (@calendar, @period) (<a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.personal</a> (full, @sort) <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)</p> <p><b>full</b> indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.personal</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p>

	Legal values yes are: [Default]
Member of	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
May contain	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
Example	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;Rochester&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;region&gt;New York&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;geogName&gt;Arrochar Alps&lt;/geogName&gt;   &lt;region&gt;Argylshire&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;measure&gt;10 miles&lt;/measure&gt;   &lt;offset&gt;Northeast of&lt;/offset&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;Attica&lt;/settlement&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt;</pre>
Schematron	<pre>&lt;s:rule context="tei:placeName[@ref and ancestor::tei:body]"&gt; &lt;s:let name="ref" value="@ref"/&gt; &lt;s:assert test="//tei:place[@xml:id = substring-after(\$ref, '#')] and starts-with(\$ref, '#')"&gt; the value of #ref is not declared  &lt;s:value-of select="\$ref"/&gt;  &lt;/s:assert&gt; &lt;/s:rule&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element placeName {   att.datable.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.personal.attribute.sort,   att.naming.attribute.role,   att.naming.attribute.nymRef,   att.canonical.attribute.key,   att.canonical.attribute.ref,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute full { "yes" }?,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### 2.1.63. <profileDesc>

<b>&lt;profileDesc&gt;</b> (Description du texte) permet d'ajouter des informations metatextuelles vers lesquelles on pourra pointer au fil du texte. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.teiHeaderPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>corpus:</b> <u>particDesc</u> <u>settingDesc</u>
<b>Note</b>	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;profileDesc&gt;   &lt;langUsage&gt;     &lt;language ident="fr"&gt;French&lt;/language&gt;   &lt;/langUsage&gt;   &lt;textDesc n="novel"&gt;     &lt;channel mode="w"&gt;print; part issues&lt;/channel&gt;     &lt;constitution type="single"/&gt;     &lt;derivation type="original"/&gt;     &lt;domain type="art"/&gt;     &lt;factuality type="fiction"/&gt;     &lt;interaction type="none"/&gt;     &lt;preparedness type="prepared"/&gt;     &lt;purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/&gt;     &lt;purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/&gt;   &lt;/textDesc&gt;   &lt;settingDesc&gt;     &lt;setting&gt;       &lt;name&gt;Paris, France&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;time&gt;Late 19th century&lt;/time&gt;     &lt;/setting&gt;   &lt;/settingDesc&gt; &lt;/profileDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.profileDescPart"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element profileDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   model.profileDescPart* } </pre>

### 2.1.64. <projectDesc>

<b>&lt;projectDesc&gt;</b> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.encodingDescPart</u>

<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>encodingDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;projectDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/projectDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element projectDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   model.pLike+ }</pre>

## 2.1.65. <provenance>

<provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object after its creation but before its acquisition. [10.8. History]	
<b>Module</b>	<b>msdescription</b>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.dateable</u> (@calendar, @period) ( <u>att.dateable.w3c</u> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <u>att.dateable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <u>att.dateable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>history</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;provenance&gt;Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.&lt;/provenance&gt; &lt;provenance&gt;Sold at Sothebys in 1899.&lt;/provenance&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element provenance {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,</pre>



	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.datable.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.specialPara } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.66. <pubPlace>

<b>&lt;pubPlace&gt;</b> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) ( <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref))
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.imprintPart</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Oxford University Press&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1989&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element pubPlace {   att.global.attributes,   att.naming.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.67. <publicationStmt>

<b>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</b> (Information sur l'édition) donne les principales informations sur l'édition : nom de l'éditeur, date, conditions de diffusion. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">fileDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">idno</a>
<b>Note</b>	Where a publication statement contains several members of the <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.agency</a> or <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a> classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are

	presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;C. Muquardt &lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date when="1846"/&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Chadwyck Healey&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Cambridge&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;availability&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Available under licence only&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/availability&gt;   &lt;date when="1992"&gt;1992&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Zea Books&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Lincoln, NE&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;2017&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;availability&gt;     &lt;p&gt;This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/availability&gt;   &lt;ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element publicationStmt {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   (     ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtPart.detail* )+       model.pLike+   ) }</pre>

## 2.1.68. <publisher>

<b>&lt;publisher&gt;</b> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.imprintPart</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.agency</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a>

	<b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height locus origDate width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country geo location persName placeName settlement surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;imprint&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Clarendon Press&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1987&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/imprint&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element publisher {   att.global.attributes,   att.canonical.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.69. <rdg>

<rdg> (Leçon) permet de signaler une leçon différente de celle du texte édité. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.textCritical</u> (cause, @require) <u>att.written</u> (@hand)</p> <p>cause classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.textCritical</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>om.</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> (Omission) signale les leçons où le texte du lemme est omis.</p> <p><b>la-</b></p> <p><b>cune</b>(Lacune) signale les leçons où le texte d'un témoin présente une lacune qui s'étant sur plusieurs vers ou un paragraphe.</p> <p>wit (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.witnessed</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;s:rule context="tei:rdg[@wit]"&gt; &lt;s:let name="ref1" value="tokenize(@wit,' ')[1]"/&gt; &lt;s:assert test="//tei:witness[@xml:id = substring-after(\$ref1, '#')] and starts-with(\$ref1, '#')"&gt; the value of @wit is not declared &lt;/s:assert&gt; &lt;/s:rule&gt;</p>

	type	<p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>inv.</b> <b>are:</b> (Inversion) signale les leçons où l'ordre des mots est inversé par rapport à celui du lemme.</p> <p><b>plur.</b> (Passage au pluriel) signale les leçons où les termes sont au pluriel dans la variante.</p> <p><b>sing.</b> (Passage au singulier) signale les leçons où les termes sont au singulier dans la variante.</p> <p><b>temps</b> (Changement de temps) signale les leçons où le temps verbal a été modifié dans la variante.</p> <p><b>ajout</b> (Ajout) signale les leçons où la variante propose un ajout par rapport au lemme.</p> <p><b>red.</b> (red.) signale les leçons où la variante propose un texte plus concis que celui du lemme.</p> <p><b>et-ym.</b> (etym.) signale les leçons où la variante propose un terme identique avec un changement de base étymologique. Nous avons ainsi signalé les formes du verbe être étymologiques et les formes refaites sur *estare.</p> <p><b>casAbs</b> (casAbs) signale les leçons où le texte propose une variation sur l'expression du complément du nom avec ou sans l'expression de la préposition "de".</p> <p><b>er-reur</b> (erreur) signale les leçons où la variante propose une leçon issue d'une erreur évidente de copie</p> <p><b>out-il</b> (Mots outils) signale les leçons où la variante consiste en la suppression, l'addition ou le remplacement d'un mot outil de type conjonction de coordination, adverbe de phrase, préposition ou conjonction de subordination et qui n'a pas d'influence majeure sur la syntaxe ou le sens de la phrase</p> <p><b>proP-er</b> (Pronom personnel) signale les leçons où la variante consiste en l'ajout d'un pronom personnel sujet</p> <p><b>genre</b> (genre) signale les leçons où la variante consiste en un changement de genre</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.rdgLike</u>	
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textcrit:</b> app	
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> pc	

	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sur-name</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">div</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;rdg wit="#Ra2"&gt;Eryment&lt;/rdg&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divPart"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="titlePage"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="argument"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="byline"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="docAuthor"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="docDate"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="docEdition"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="docImprint"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="docTitle"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="epigraph"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="imprimatur"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="titlePart"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="epilogue"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="performance"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="prologue"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="set"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.rdgPart"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element rdg {   att.global.attributes,   att.textCritical.attribute.require,   att.written.attribute.hand,   attribute cause { "om."   "lacune" }?,   attribute wit { list { + } }   &gt;&gt;   tei:constraintSpec   [     ident = "witDecl"     scheme = "isoschematron"     " "     " "     " the value of @wit is not declared"   ],   attribute type   {     "inv."       "plur."       "sing."       "temps"       "ajout"       "red."       "etym."       "casAbs"       "erreur"       "outil"       "proPer"       "genre"   }?,   (     text       model.divLike       model.divPart       titlePage       argument       byline       docAuthor   ) }</pre>

	<pre>   docDate   docEdition   docImprint   docTitle   epigraph   imprimatur   titlePart   epilogue   performance   prologue   set   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.inter   model.global   model.rdgPart   ) * } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.70. <ref>

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.cReferencing</a> (@cRef) <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.internetMedia</a> (@mimeType) <a href="#">att.pointing</a> (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.ptrLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sur-name</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	The <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes are mutually exclusive.
<b>Example</b>	See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>
<b>Example</b>	See also <ref target="#location">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element ref {   att.cReferencing.attributes,   att.declaring.attributes, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.internetMedia.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.paraContent } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.71. <refsDecl>

<b>&lt;refsDecl&gt;</b> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.encodingDescPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>encodingDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> p <b>header:</b> <u>cRefPattern</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;refsDecl&gt;   &lt;cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"     replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='\$1']/div[\$2]/div3[\$3])"/&gt; &lt;/refsDecl&gt; </pre> <p>This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;refsDecl&gt;   &lt;p&gt;References are made up by concatenating the value for the   &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; attribute on the highest level &lt;gi&gt;div&lt;/gi&gt;   element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential   number of the next level &lt;gi&gt;div&lt;/gi&gt; followed by a colon   followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)   level &lt;gi&gt;div&lt;/gi&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/refsDecl&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="cRefPattern"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="refState" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element refsDecl {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   cRefPattern+   refState+ ) } </pre>

## 2.1.72. <reg>

<b>&lt;reg&gt;</b> (Régularisation) permet d'encoder la forme régularisée. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @sub-type)
<b>Member of</b>	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <b>&lt;reg&gt;</b> may be used alone:  <pre>&lt;q&gt;Please &lt;reg&gt;knock&lt;/reg&gt; if an &lt;reg&gt;answer&lt;/reg&gt; is &lt;reg&gt;required&lt;/reg&gt; &lt;/q&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <b>&lt;choice&gt;</b> and <b>&lt;orig&gt;</b> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:  <pre>&lt;q&gt;Please &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;reg resp="#LB"&gt;knock&lt;/reg&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;cnk&lt;/orig&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; if an &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;reg&gt;answer&lt;/reg&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;nsr&lt;/orig&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; is &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;reg&gt;required&lt;/reg&gt;   &lt;orig&gt;reqd&lt;/orig&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; &lt;/q&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element reg {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,</pre>



	<pre> att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.paraContent } </pre>
--	--

### 2.1.73. <repository>

<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts or other objects are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) ( <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) ( <u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref))
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>msIdentifier</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>date</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msIdentifier&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;Oxford&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;institution&gt;University of Oxford&lt;/institution&gt;   &lt;repository&gt;Bodleian Library&lt;/repository&gt;   &lt;idno&gt;MS. Bodley 406&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;/msIdentifier&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element repository {   att.global.attributes,   att.naming.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>

### 2.1.74. <rs>

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.5.1. Referring Strings]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) ( <u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) ( <u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.nameLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>witness</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u>

	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;q&gt;My dear &lt;rs type="person"&gt;Mr. Bennet&lt;/rs&gt;, &lt;/q&gt; said &lt;rs type="person"&gt;his lady&lt;/rs&gt; to him one day, &lt;q&gt;have you heard that &lt;rs type="place"&gt;Netherfield Park&lt;/rs&gt; is let at last?&lt;/q&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element rs {   att.global.attributes,   att.naming.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.75. <said>

<said> (Dialogue) permet de signaler les dialogues dans le texte. [3.3.3. Quotation]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) (<a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) (<a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) (<a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) (<a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) (<a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.ascribed.directed</a> (@toWhom) (<a href="#">att.ascribed</a> (@who))</p> <p><b>aloud</b> may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having been vocalized or signed.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.xTruthValue</a></p> <pre>&lt;p&gt; Celia thought privately, &lt;said aloud="false"&gt;Dorothea quite despises Sir James Chettam; I believe she would not accept him.&lt;/said&gt; Celia felt that this was a pity.  &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed.</p> <p><b>direct</b> may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.xTruthValue</a>  <b>Default</b> true</p> <pre>&lt;!-- in the header --&gt;&lt;editorialDecl&gt; &lt;quotation marks="none"/&gt; &lt;/editorialDecl&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;p&gt;Tantripp had brought a card, and said that &lt;said direct="false"&gt;there was a gentleman wa The courier had told him that &lt;said direct="false"&gt;only Mrs. Casaubon was at home&lt;/said&gt;, but he said &lt;said direct="false"&gt;he was a relation of Mr. Casaubon's: would she see him?&lt;/ &lt;/p&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value true indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value false that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect.</p>

Member of	<a href="#">model.attributable</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a>
May contain	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
Example	<pre>&lt;!-- in the header --&gt;&lt;editorialDecl&gt;   &lt;quotation marks="all"/&gt; &lt;/editorialDecl&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;p&gt;   &lt;said&gt;"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with jewels and   gold"&lt;/said&gt;, a troublemaker simpered. &lt;said&gt;"He'll trample on the Duke's camellias, spill   his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the Duke   will say, &lt;said&gt;'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and Tags, O   rider of the sun!'"&lt;/said&gt;"&lt;/said&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;p&gt;   &lt;said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")"&gt;Hmmm&lt;/said&gt;, said a small voice in his ear.   &lt;said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")"&gt;Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of courage, I see.   Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes – and a nice thirst to prove   yourself, now that's interesting. ... So where shall I put you?&lt;/said&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought, &lt;said aloud="false" rend="italic"&gt;Not   Slytherin, not Slytherin&lt;/said&gt;.&lt;/p&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element said {   att.global.attributes,   att.ascribed.directed.attributes,   attribute aloud { text }?,   attribute direct { text }?,   macro.specialPara }</pre>

## 2.1.76. <scriptDesc>

<scriptDesc> contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2.1. Writing]	
Module	<a href="#">msdescription</a>
Attributes	<a href="#">Attributes</a> <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Member of	<a href="#">model.physDescPart</a>
Contained by	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">physDesc</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">scriptNote</a>

<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;scriptDesc&gt;   &lt;p/&gt; &lt;/scriptDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;scriptDesc&gt;   &lt;summary&gt;Contains two distinct styles of scripts &lt;/summary&gt;   &lt;scriptNote xml:id="style-1"&gt;.&lt;/scriptNote&gt;   &lt;scriptNote xml:id="style-2"&gt;.&lt;/scriptNote&gt; &lt;/scriptDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="scriptNote"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element scriptDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, scriptNote+ ) ) }</pre>

## 2.1.77. <scriptNote>

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.handFeatures</u> (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>scriptDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sur-name</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;scriptNote scope="sole"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element scriptNote {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,</pre>

```

att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
att.global.change.attribute.change,
att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
att.global.source.attribute.source,
att.handFeatures.attributes,
macro.specialPara
}

```

## 2.1.78. <seg>

<seg> (Segment) permet d'individualiser des segments de texte. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

<b>Module</b>	linking
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.segLike</a> (@function) (<a href="#">att.datcat</a> (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (<a href="#">att.fragmentable</a>) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.notated</a> (@notation) <a href="#">att.global</a> (xml:lang, @xml:id, @n, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @sub-type)</p> <p><b>xml:lang</b> (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.language</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>lat</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> <b>grec</b></p> <p><b>type</b> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>num-</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> <b>ber</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.choicePart</a> <a href="#">model.segLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a></p> <p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sur-</a> <a href="#">name</a></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a></p> <p>character data</p>

<b>Note</b>	The <code>&lt;seg&gt;</code> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <code>&lt;ptr&gt;</code> or other similar element.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;seg&gt;When are you leaving?&lt;/seg&gt; &lt;seg&gt;Tomorrow.&lt;/seg&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;s&gt;   &lt;seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap"&gt;So father's only&lt;/seg&gt; glory was the ballfield. &lt;/s&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;seg type="preamble"&gt;   &lt;seg&gt;Sigmund, &lt;seg type="patronym"&gt;the son of Volsung&lt;/seg&gt;, was a king in Frankish country.&lt;/seg&gt;   &lt;seg&gt;Sinfliotli was the eldest of his sons ...&lt;/seg&gt;   &lt;seg&gt;Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... &lt;/seg&gt; &lt;/seg&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element seg {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.segLike.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.written.attributes,   att.notated.attributes,   attribute xml:lang { "lat"   "grec" }?,   attribute type { "number" }?,   macro.paraContent }</pre>

## 2.1.79. <settingDesc>

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]	
<b>Module</b>	corpus
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <code>att.global.change</code> (@change) <code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp) <code>att.global.source</code> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<code>model.profileDescPart</code>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <code>profileDesc</code>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <code>p</code> <b>namesdates:</b> <code>listPlace</code> <code>place</code>
<b>Note</b>	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <code>&lt;setting&gt;</code> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <code>&lt;place&gt;</code> optionally grouped by <code>&lt;listPlace&gt;</code> inside <code>&lt;standOff&gt;</code> should be preferred.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;settingDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Texts recorded in the     Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988 &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/settingDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="setting"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"/&gt;   &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element settingDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( setting   model.placeLike   listPlace )+ ) } </pre>

## 2.1.80. <settlement>

<settlement> contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.dataable</a> (@calendar, @period) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (ref, @key) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @sub-type)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;settlement type="town"&gt;Glasgow&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;region&gt;Scotland&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element settlement {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.naming.attribute.role, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.81. <sic>

<sic> (Graphie originale mais fautive) permet d'encoder la forme originale du manuscrit tout en signalant que cette dernière est fautive [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.choicePart</u> <u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and &lt;sic&gt;a Table&lt;/sic&gt; of green fields. </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, &lt;sic&gt; may be used alone:</p> <pre> I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how &lt;sic&gt;we can&lt;/sic&gt; prove or disprove anyone's theories? </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>It is also possible, using the &lt;choice&gt; and &lt;corr&gt; elements, to provide a corrected reading:</p> <pre> I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how &lt;choice&gt; &lt;sic&gt;we can&lt;/sic&gt; &lt;corr&gt;can we&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; prove or disprove anyone's theories? </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and &lt;choice&gt; &lt;sic&gt;a Table&lt;/sic&gt; &lt;corr&gt;a' babbld&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt; of green fields. </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>



<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element sic {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.paraContent } </pre>
---------------------------	--

## 2.1.82. <sourceDesc>

<b>&lt;sourceDesc&gt;</b> (Description des Sources) donne des informations sur les manuscrits collationnés. [2.2.7. The Source Description]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p><b>default</b> indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.declarable</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.truthValue</u></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <b>false</b> [Default]</p>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>p</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u></p> <p><b>textcrit:</b> <u>listWit</u></p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;sourceDesc&gt; &lt;bibl&gt;   &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt;. In &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;. &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt; &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;sourceDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Born digital: no previous source exists.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.listLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element sourceDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, attribute default { "false" }?, (   model.pLike+     ( model.biblLike   model.sourceDescPart   model.listLike )+ ) } </pre>
--	--

### 2.1.83. <support>

<support> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript or other object. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
Contained by	msdescription: <u>supportDesc</u>
May contain	<b>analysis:</b> <u>pc</u> <b>core:</b> <u>abbr</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>expan</u> <u>hi</u> <u>l</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lg</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>orig</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>reg</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>sic</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sur-name</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <u>listWit</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
Example	<pre> &lt;objectDesc form="roll"&gt;   &lt;supportDesc&gt;     &lt;support&gt; Parchment roll with &lt;material&gt;silk&lt;/material&gt; ribbons.   &lt;/support&gt; &lt;/supportDesc&gt; &lt;/objectDesc&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element support {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.specialPara } </pre>

### 2.1.84. <supportDesc>

<supportDesc> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript or other object. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
Module	msdescription

<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">objectDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">support</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;supportDesc&gt; &lt;support&gt; Parchment roll with &lt;material&gt;silk&lt;/material&gt; ribbons. &lt;/support&gt; &lt;/supportDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="support" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="foliation"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="collation"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="condition"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element supportDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?, condition? ) ) }</pre>

## 2.1.85. <surname>

<surname> contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.personal</a> (@full, @sort) ( <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) ( <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref)) ) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (@type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.persNamePart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a>

	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>geo</u> <u>location</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>ex</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;surname type="combine"&gt;St John Stevas&lt;/surname&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element surname {   att.global.attributes,   att.personal.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.86. <teiCorpus>

<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)</p> <p><b>version</b> specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.version</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the <i>source</i> attribute on the associated &lt;schemaSpec&gt;.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.describedResource</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>teiCorpus</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>teiCorpus</u> <b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI text</u>
<b>Note</b>	Should contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;   &lt;teiHeader&gt;     &lt;!-- header for corpus --&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;TEI&gt;     &lt;teiHeader&gt;       &lt;!-- header for first text --&gt;     &lt;/teiHeader&gt;     &lt;text&gt;       &lt;!-- content of first text --&gt;     &lt;/text&gt;   &lt;/TEI&gt;   &lt;TEI&gt;     &lt;teiHeader&gt;       &lt;!-- header for second text --&gt;     &lt;/teiHeader&gt;     &lt;text&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;!-- content of second text --&gt; &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt; &lt;!-- more TEI elements here --&gt; &lt;/teiCorpus&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="teiHeader"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.resource"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.describedResource"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element teiCorpus {   att.global.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   attribute version { text }?,   ( teiHeader, model.resource*, model.describedResource+ ) } </pre>

## 2.1.87. <teiHeader>

<b>&lt;teiHeader&gt;</b> (En tête du document XML TEI) permet de présenter les principes d'encodage du texte et d'ajouter des informations metatextuelles. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>teiCorpus</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>profileDesc</u>
<b>Note</b>	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;teiHeader&gt;   &lt;fileDesc&gt;     &lt;titleStmt&gt;       &lt;title&gt;Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;author&gt;Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)&lt;/author&gt;       &lt;respStmt&gt;         &lt;resp&gt;Originally prepared by&lt;/resp&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Trevor Howard-Hill&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/respStmt&gt;       &lt;respStmt&gt;         &lt;resp&gt;Revised and edited by&lt;/resp&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Christine Avern-Carr&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/respStmt&gt;     &lt;/titleStmt&gt;     &lt;publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;distributor&gt;Oxford Text Archive&lt;/distributor&gt;       &lt;address&gt;         &lt;addrLine&gt;13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK&lt;/addrLine&gt;       &lt;/address&gt;       &lt;idno type="OTA"&gt;119&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;availability&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Freely available on a non-commercial basis.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/availability&gt;       &lt;date when="1968"&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;     &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;     &lt;sourceDesc&gt;       &lt;bibl&gt;The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile 1968)&lt;/bibl&gt;     &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;   &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;encodingDesc&gt;     &lt;projectDesc&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/projectDesc&gt;     &lt;editorialDecl&gt;       &lt;correction&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Turned letters are silently corrected.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/correction&gt;       &lt;normalization&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured </pre>

	<pre> forms are not encoded.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/normalization&gt; &lt;/editorialDecl&gt; &lt;refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF"&gt;   &lt;cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)"     replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='\$1']/div2[@n='\$2']/lb[@n='\$3'])"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that       listed here: &lt;list&gt;         &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the preceding &lt;gi&gt;lb&lt;/gi&gt;         &lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;a period&lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the ancestor &lt;gi&gt;div2&lt;/gi&gt;         &lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;a space&lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the parent &lt;gi&gt;div1&lt;/gi&gt;         &lt;/item&gt;       &lt;/list&gt;     &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/cRefPattern&gt; &lt;/refsDecl&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; &lt;revisionDesc&gt;   &lt;list&gt;     &lt;item&gt;       &lt;date when="1989-04-12"&gt;12 Apr 89&lt;/date&gt; Last checked by CAC&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;       &lt;date when="1989-03-01"&gt;1 Mar 89&lt;/date&gt; LB made new file&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;/list&gt;   &lt;/revisionDesc&gt; &lt;/teiHeader&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="fileDesc"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="revisionDesc"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element teiHeader {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? ) } </pre>

## 2.1.88. <text>

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
<b>Module</b>	textstructure
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls) <u>att.written</u> (@hand) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.resource</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>teiCorpus</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>lb</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <b>textcrit:</b> <u>app</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u>

<b>Note</b>	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <code>&lt;floatingText&gt;</code> is provided for this purpose.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;text&gt;   &lt;front&gt;     &lt;docTitle&gt;       &lt;titlePart&gt;Autumn Haze&lt;/titlePart&gt;     &lt;/docTitle&gt;   &lt;/front&gt;   &lt;body&gt;     &lt;l&gt;Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;That settles softly down upon the water?&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/body&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:</p> <pre> &lt;text&gt;   &lt;front&gt;     &lt;!-- front matter for the whole group --&gt;   &lt;/front&gt;   &lt;group&gt;     &lt;text&gt;       &lt;!-- first text --&gt;     &lt;/text&gt;     &lt;text&gt;       &lt;!-- second text --&gt;     &lt;/text&gt;   &lt;/group&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="front"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="body"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="group"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="back"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element text {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.written.attributes,   (     model.global*,     ( front, model.global* )?,     ( body   group ),     model.global*,     ( back, model.global* )?   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.89. <title>

**<title>** contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.dataable</a> (@calendar, @period) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) ( <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (type, @subtype) <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (ref, @key)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.emphLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">titleStm</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>analysis:</b> <a href="#">pc</a> <b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	The attributes <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class <a href="#">att.canonical</a> may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title&gt;Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989&lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title&gt;Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition&lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title type="full"&gt; &lt;title type="main"&gt;Synthèse&lt;/title&gt; &lt;title type="sub"&gt;an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science&lt;/title&gt; &lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element title {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attribute.subtype,   att.canonical.attribute.key,   att.dataable.attributes,   macro.paraContent }</pre>



## 2.1.90. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (Eléments généraux sur le fichier courant) permet de renseigner par exemple le nom de l'encodeur et le titre du texte encodé. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
Contained by	<b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>title</u>
Example	<pre>&lt;titleStmt&gt; &lt;title&gt;Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription&lt;/title&gt; &lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;compiled by&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;P.J. Lucas&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; &lt;/titleStmt&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.respLike"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element titleStmt {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( title+, model.respLike* ) }</pre>

## 2.1.91. <variantEncoding>

<variantEncoding> declares the method used to encode text-critical variants. [12.1.1. The Apparatus Entry]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p>method indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> parallel-segmentation</p> <p><b>Note</b> The value 'parallel-segmentation' requires in-line encoding of the apparatus.</p> <p>location indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external to it.</p>

	<p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:variantEncoding"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="(@location != 'external') or (@method != 'parallel-segmentation')"&gt; The @location value "external" is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <b>in-ter-nal</b></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value 'external' is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.encodingDescPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>encodingDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;variantEncoding method="location-referenced"   location="external"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element variantEncoding {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   attribute method { "parallel-segmentation" },   attribute location { "internal" } }&gt;   &gt;&gt;   tei:constraintSpec   [     ident = "variantEncodingLocation"     scheme = "schematron"     " "     "" The @location value "external" is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.   ],   empty }</pre>

## 2.1.92. <width>

<width> contains a measurement of an object along the axis parallel to its bottom, e.g. perpendicular to the spine of a book or codex. [10.3.4. Dimensions]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dimensions</u> (unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) <u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p>unit names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.dimensions</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p>

	<b>Legal values mm are:</b>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.measureLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
<b>May contain</b>	Character data only
<b>Note</b>	If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the 'depth' axis.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;width unit="in"&gt;4&lt;/width&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.xtext"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element width {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,   att.dimensions.attribute.extent,   att.dimensions.attribute.precision,   att.dimensions.attribute.scope,   att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,   att.ranging.attribute.atMost,   att.ranging.attribute.min,   att.ranging.attribute.max,   att.ranging.attribute.confidence,   attribute unit { "mm" }?,   macro.xtext }</pre>

### 2.1.93. <witness>

<witness> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">listWit</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sur-name</a> <b>textcrit:</b> <a href="#">listWit</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">ex</a>

	character data
<b>Note</b>	The content of the <code>&lt;witness&gt;</code> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listWit&gt;   &lt;witness xml:id="EL"&gt;Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9&lt;/witness&gt;   &lt;witness xml:id="HG"&gt;Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,     Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D&lt;/witness&gt;   &lt;witness xml:id="RA2"&gt;Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149     (see further &lt;ptr target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRPl49"/&gt;&lt;/witness&gt; &lt;/listWit&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="note"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element witness {   att.global.attributes,   att.sortable.attributes,   ( text   model.limitedPhrase   model.inter   note ) * } </pre>

## 2.2. Model classes

### 2.2.1. model.attributable

<b>model.attributable</b> groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.quoteLike</a> <a href="#">said</a>

### 2.2.2. model.availabilityPart

<b>model.availabilityPart</b> groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">availability</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">licence</a>

### 2.2.3. model.biblLike

<b>model.biblLike</b> groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a> <a href="#">model.personPart</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a>

### 2.2.4. model.biblPart

<b>model.biblPart</b> groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.imprintPart</a> [ <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> ] <a href="#">model.respLike</a> [ <a href="#">author</a> ] <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a>

## 2.2.5. model.choicePart

<b>model.choicePart</b> groups elements (other than <u>&lt;choice&gt;</u> itself) which can be used within a <u>&lt;choice&gt;</u> alternation. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>choice</u>
Members	<u>abbr</u> <u>corr</u> <u>ex</u> <u>expan</u> <u>orig</u> <u>reg</u> <u>seg</u> <u>sic</u>

## 2.2.6. model.common

<b>model.common</b> groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>body</u> <u>div</u>
Members	<u>model.divPart</u> [ <u>model.lLike</u> [ <u>l</u> ] <u>model.pLike</u> [ <u>p</u> ] <u>lg</u> ] <u>model.inter</u> [ <u>model.attributable</u> [ <u>model.quoteLike</u> <u>said</u> ] <u>model.biblLike</u> [ <u>bibl</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>msDesc</u> ] <u>model.egLike</u> <u>model.labelLike</u> <u>model.listLike</u> [ <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>listWit</u> ] <u>model.oddDecl</u> <u>model.stageLike</u> ]
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

## 2.2.7. model.dateLike

<b>model.dateLike</b> groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>model.pPart.data</u>
Members	<u>date</u>

## 2.2.8. model.describedResource

<b>model.describedResource</b> groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or 'root' element of a TEI-conformant document [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>teiCorpus</u>
Members	<u>TEI</u> <u>teiCorpus</u>

## 2.2.9. model.divBottom

<b>model.divBottom</b> groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>body</u> <u>div</u> <u>lg</u>
Members	<u>model.divBottomPart</u> <u>model.divWrapper</u>

## 2.2.10. model.divLike

<b>model.divLike</b> groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>body</u> <u>div</u> <u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u>
Members	<u>div</u>

## 2.2.11. model.divPart

<b>model.divPart</b> groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
---	--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.common</a> <a href="#">rdg</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.lLike[l]</a> <a href="#">model.pLike[p]</a> <a href="#">lg</a>
<b>Note</b>	Note that this element class does not include members of the <a href="#">model.inter</a> class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

## 2.2.12. model.divTop

<b>model.divTop</b> groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">lg</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.divTopPart</a> [ <a href="#">model.headLike</a> [ <a href="#">head</a> ]] <a href="#">model.divWrapper</a>

## 2.2.13. model.divTopPart

<b>model.divTopPart</b> groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.divTop</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.headLike</a> [ <a href="#">head</a> ]

## 2.2.14. model.emphLike

<b>model.emphLike</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.highlighted</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">title</a>

## 2.2.15. model.encodingDescPart

<b>model.encodingDescPart</b> groups elements which may be used inside <a href="#">&lt;encodingDesc&gt;</a> and appear multiple times.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">encodingDesc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">projectDesc</a> <a href="#">refsDecl</a> <a href="#">variantEncoding</a>

## 2.2.16. model.global

<b>model.global</b> groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq.limited</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">text</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.global.edit</a> [ <a href="#">app</a> ] <a href="#">model.global.meta</a> <a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a> [ <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">pb</a> ] <a href="#">model.note-Like</a> [ <a href="#">note</a> ]

## 2.2.17. model.global.edit

<b>model.global.edit</b> groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.global</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">app</a>

## 2.2.18. model.headLike

<b>model.headLike</b> groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <a href="#">model.divTopPart</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">place</a>
Members	<a href="#">head</a>

## 2.2.19. model.hiLike

<b>model.hiLike</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.highlighted</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a>
Members	<a href="#">hi</a>

## 2.2.20. model.highlighted

<b>model.highlighted</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.emphLike[title]</a> <a href="#">model.hiLike[hi]</a>

## 2.2.21. model.imprintPart

<b>model.imprintPart</b> groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a>
Members	<a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a>

## 2.2.22. model.inter

<b>model.inter</b> groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.common</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.attributable[model.quoteLike said]</a> <a href="#">model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc]</a> <a href="#">model.eg-Like</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike</a> <a href="#">model.listLike[listPerson listPlace listWit]</a> <a href="#">model.oddDecl</a> <a href="#">model.stageLike</a>

## 2.2.23. model.lLike

<b>model.lLike</b> groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">model.divPart</a>
Members	<a href="#">l</a>

## 2.2.24. model.limitedPhrase

<b>model.limitedPhrase</b> groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei

Used by	<a href="#">macro.phraseSeq.limited</a> <a href="#">witness</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.emphLike[title]</a> <a href="#">model.hiLike[hi]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data[model.addressLike model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[geo height width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs]]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice ex expan]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc[locus origDate]</a> <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike[ref]</a>

### 2.2.25. model.listLike

<b>model.listLike</b> groups list-like elements. [3.7. Lists]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.inter</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">listWit</a>

### 2.2.26. model.measureLike

<b>model.measureLike</b> groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">width</a>

### 2.2.27. model.milestoneLike

<b>model.milestoneLike</b> groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">model.global</a>
Members	<a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">pb</a>

### 2.2.28. model.nameLike

<b>model.nameLike</b> groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent[persName]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement] location] idno rs</a>
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

### 2.2.29. model.nameLike.agent

<b>model.nameLike.agent</b> groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a>
Members	<a href="#">persName</a>
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

### 2.2.30. model.noteLike

<b>model.noteLike</b> groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
--	--



<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">app location</a> <a href="#">model.global</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">place</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">note</a>

### 2.2.31. model.pLike

<b>model.pLike</b> groups paragraph-like elements.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">cRefPattern</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">model.divPart</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">projectDesc</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">refsDecl</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">p</a>

### 2.2.32. model.pPart.data

<b>model.pPart.data</b> groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.addressLike</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[date]</a> <a href="#">model.measureLike[geo height width]</a> <a href="#">model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[persName]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[surname]</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName settlement]</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">rs</a>

### 2.2.33. model.pPart.edit

<b>model.pPart.edit</b> groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a> <a href="#">pc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice ex expan]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional[corr del orig reg sic]</a>

### 2.2.34. model.pPart.editorial

<b>model.pPart.editorial</b> groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.edit</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">ex</a> <a href="#">expan</a>

### 2.2.35. model.pPart.msdesc

<b>model.pPart.msdesc</b> groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a>

### 2.2.36. model.pPart.transcriptional

<b>model.pPart.transcriptional</b> groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei

Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.edit</a>
Members	<a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">sic</a>

### 2.2.37. model.persNamePart

<b>model.persNamePart</b> groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a>
Members	<a href="#">surname</a>

### 2.2.38. model.persStateLike

<b>model.persStateLike</b> groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.personPart</a>
Members	<a href="#">persName</a>
Note	These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

### 2.2.39. model.personLike

<b>model.personLike</b> groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">person</a>

### 2.2.40. model.personPart

<b>model.personPart</b> groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">person</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.biblLike</a> [ <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> ] <a href="#">model.eventLike</a> <a href="#">model.persStateLike</a> [ <a href="#">persName</a> ] <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">idno</a>

### 2.2.41. model.phrase

<b>model.phrase</b> groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">rdg</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.graphicLike</a> <a href="#">model.highlighted</a> [ <a href="#">model.emphLike</a> [ <a href="#">title</a> ] <a href="#">model.hiLike</a> [ <a href="#">hi</a> ]] <a href="#">model.lPart</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data</a> [ <a href="#">model.addressLike</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike</a> [ <a href="#">date</a> ] <a href="#">model.measureLike</a> [ <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">width</a> ] <a href="#">model.nameLike</a> [ <a href="#">model.nameLike.agent</a> [ <a href="#">persName</a> ] <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">surname</a> ] <a href="#">model.placeStateLike</a> [ <a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> ] <a href="#">location</a> ] <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">rs</a> ]] <a href="#">model.pPart.edit</a> [ <a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> [ <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">ex</a> <a href="#">expan</a> ] <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional</a> [ <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">sic</a> ]] <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a> [ <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> ] <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike</a> [ <a href="#">ref</a> ] <a href="#">model.segLike</a> [ <a href="#">pc</a> <a href="#">seg</a> ] <a href="#">model.specDescLike</a>
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

### 2.2.42. model.physDescPart

<b>model.physDescPart</b> groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.	
---	--

Module	msdescription
Used by	<a href="#">physDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a>

### 2.2.43. model.placeLike

<b>model.placeLike</b> groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">place</a>

### 2.2.44. model.placeNamePart

<b>model.placeNamePart</b> groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a>
Members	<a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a>

### 2.2.45. model.placeStateLike

<b>model.placeStateLike</b> groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a> <a href="#">place</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> ] <a href="#">location</a>

### 2.2.46. model.profileDescPart

<b>model.profileDescPart</b> groups elements which may be used inside <a href="#">&lt;profileDesc&gt;</a> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">profileDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a>

### 2.2.47. model.ptrLike

<b>model.ptrLike</b> groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
Members	<a href="#">ref</a>

### 2.2.48. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

<b>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</b> groups the child elements of a <a href="#">&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</a> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">publisher</a>
Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a> .

### 2.2.49. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

<b>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</b> groups the agency-specific child elements of the <u>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</u> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>publicationStmt</u>
<b>Members</b>	<u>model.ptrLike[ref]</u> <u>availability</u> <u>date</u> <u>idno</u> <u>pubPlace</u>
<b>Note</b>	A 'detail' child element may not occur unless an 'agency' child element precedes it. See also <u>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</u> .

### 2.2.50. model.rdgLike

<b>model.rdgLike</b> groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Used by</b>	<u>app</u>
<b>Members</b>	<u>rdg</u>
<b>Note</b>	This class allows for variants of the <u>&lt;rdg&gt;</u> element to be easily created via TEI customizations.

### 2.2.51. model.resource

<b>model.resource</b> groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>TEI</u> <u>teiCorpus</u>
<b>Members</b>	<u>text</u>

### 2.2.52. model.respLike

<b>model.respLike</b> groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>Members</b>	<u>author</u>

### 2.2.53. model.segLike

<b>model.segLike</b> groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>bibl</u> <u>model.phrase</u>
<b>Members</b>	<u>pc</u> <u>seg</u>
<b>Note</b>	The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <u>&lt;segmentation&gt;</u> element of the <u>&lt;encodingDesc&gt;</u> within the associated TEI header.

### 2.2.54. model.teiHeaderPart

<b>model.teiHeaderPart</b> groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>teiHeader</u>
<b>Members</b>	<u>encodingDesc</u> <u>profileDesc</u>

## 2.3. Attribute classes

### 2.3.1. att.ascribed

<b>att.ascribed</b> provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.ascribed.directed</a> [ <a href="#">said</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>who</b> indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p>In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (&lt;sp&gt;) in the body of the play are linked to &lt;castItem&gt; elements in the &lt;castList&gt; using the <i>who</i> attribute.</p> <pre>&lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="Barnardo"&gt;Bernardo&lt;/role&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt; &lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="Francisco"&gt;Francisco&lt;/role&gt;   &lt;roleDesc&gt;a soldier&lt;/roleDesc&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;sp who="#Barnardo"&gt;   &lt;speaker&gt;Bernardo&lt;/speaker&gt;   &lt;l n="1"&gt;Who's there?&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/sp&gt; &lt;sp who="#Francisco"&gt;   &lt;speaker&gt;Francisco&lt;/speaker&gt;   &lt;l n="2"&gt;Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/sp&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <a href="#">person</a> element.</p>

### 2.3.2. att.ascribed.directed

<b>att.ascribed.directed</b> provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">said</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.ascribed</a> (@who)</p> <p><b>toWhom</b> indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p>In the following example from Mary Pix's <i>The False Friend</i>, speeches (&lt;sp&gt;) in the body of the play are linked to &lt;castItem&gt; elements in the &lt;castList&gt; using the <i>toWhom</i> attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the &lt;stage&gt; includes <i>toWhom</i> to indicate the directionality of the action.</p> <pre>&lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="emil"&gt;Emilius.&lt;/role&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt; &lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="lov"&gt;Lovisa&lt;/role&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt; &lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="serv"&gt;A servant&lt;/role&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt;</pre>

	<pre>&lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;sp who="#emil" toWhom="#lov"&gt; &lt;speaker&gt;Emil.&lt;/speaker&gt; &lt;l n="1"&gt;My love!&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/sp&gt; &lt;sp who="#lov" toWhom="#emil"&gt; &lt;speaker&gt;Lov.&lt;/speaker&gt; &lt;l n="2"&gt;I have no Witness of my Noble Birth&lt;/l&gt; &lt;stage who="emil" toWhom="#serv"&gt;Pointing to her Woman.&lt;/stage&gt; &lt;l&gt;But that poor helpless wretch—&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/sp&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a <i>toWhom</i> attribute.</p>
--	--

2.3.3. att.breaking

<b>att.breaking</b> provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>cb</u> <u>lb</u> <u>pb</u>
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>break</p> <p>indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Recommended</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Sample values include</b> <b>yes</b></p> <p>the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace</p> <p><b>no</b></p> <p>the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace</p> <p><b>maybe</b></p> <p>the encoding does not take any position on this issue.</p> <p>In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words <i>l#ðost</i> and <i>reord-berendum</i>.</p> <pre>&lt;ab&gt; ...e#esa tome iu ic#s #e#orden #ita heardo#t . leodum la&lt;lb break="no"/&gt; ðost æþan ichim lifes #e# rihtne #erymde reord be&lt;lb break="no"/&gt; rendum h#æt me þa#e#eorðode #uldres ealdor ofer... &lt;/ab&gt;</pre>

2.3.4. att.cReferencing

<b>att.cReferencing</b> provides an attribute which may be used to supply a <i>canonical reference</i> as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>ref</u>
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>cRef</p> <p>(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <u>&lt;refs-Decl&gt;</u> element in the TEI header</p>

	<p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value of <i>cRef</i> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target. The <u>&lt;refsDecl&gt;</u> to use may be indicated with the <i>decls</i> attribute. Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <u>&lt;ptr&gt;</u> element.</p>
--	--

### 2.3.5. att.canonical

**att.canonical** provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.naming</u> [ <u>att.personal</u> [ <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> ] <u>author</u> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>repository</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u> ] <u>date</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>title</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>key</b> provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <pre>&lt;author&gt;   &lt;name key="name 427308"     type="organisation"&gt;[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;  &lt;author&gt;   &lt;name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"     ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608"&gt;Victor Hugo&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the <i>key</i> attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a <i>ref</i> attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.</p> <p><b>ref</b> (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <pre>&lt;name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"   type="person"&gt;Seamus Heaney&lt;/name&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.</p>

### 2.3.6. att.dateable

**att.dateable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">title</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)</p> <p><b>calendar</b> indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"&gt; @calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this &lt;sch:name/&gt; element has no textual content.&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p> <pre> He was born on &lt;date calendar="#gregorian"&gt;Feb. 22, 1732&lt;/date&gt; (&lt;date when="1732-02-22"&gt; Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.&lt;/date&gt;). calendar="#julian" </pre> <p><b>Note</b> Note that the <i>calendar</i> attribute (unlike <i>datingMethod</i> defined in <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a>) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, <i>not</i> the calendar to which the date is normalized.</p> <p><b>period</b> supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p>
<b>Note</b>	This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> and <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

### 2.3.7. att.dataable.custom

<b>att.dataable.custom</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dataable</a> [ <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>when-custom</b> supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p>The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are <i>not</i> valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system</p> <pre> &lt;p&gt;Alhazen died in Cairo on the &lt;date when="1040-03-06"   when-custom="431-06-12"&gt; 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH &lt;/date&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The current world will end at the &lt;date when="2012-12-21"   when-custom="13.0.0.0.0"&gt;end of B'ak'tun 13&lt;/date&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The Battle of Meggidu </pre>



```

(<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p>
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub
<date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date>
</p>

```

Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The *when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.

**notBefore-custom** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-# occurrences of [teidata.word](#) separated by whitespace

**notAfter-custom** specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-# occurrences of [teidata.word](#) separated by whitespace

**from-custom** indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-# occurrences of [teidata.word](#) separated by whitespace

```

<event xml:id="FIRE1"
  datingMethod="#julian"
  from-custom="1666-09-02"
  to-custom="1666-09-05">
  <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
  <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
    of the city of London.</p>
</event>

```

**to-custom** indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-# occurrences of [teidata.word](#) separated by whitespace

**datingPoint** supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.pointer](#)

**datingMethod** supplies a pointer to a [calendar](#) element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.pointer](#)

```

Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne
e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date when-custom="1598"
  calendar="#julian"
  datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
Citizen of London.

```

In this example, the *calendar* attribute points to a [calendar](#) element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the [date](#) element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-custom* attribute value is Julian too.

```

<date when="1382-06-28"
  when-custom="6890-06-20"
  datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> u### ##### ### <num>#</num> ##### <num>###</num>
</date>

```

In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in *when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.

	<p><b>Note</b> Note that the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute (unlike <i>calendar</i> defined in <i>att.dateable</i>) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the <i>when-custom</i> or other <i>X-custom</i> attributes), <i>not</i> the calendar of the original date in the element.</p>
--	---

## 2.3.8. att.dateable.iso

<p><b>att.dateable.iso</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dateable</a> [ <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">place-Name</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>when-iso</b> supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date &amp; time formats that are <i>not</i> valid W3C format normalizations.</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00"&gt;Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04"&gt;Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05"&gt;4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05"&gt;4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03"&gt;a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when-iso="03:00"&gt;3 A.M.&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="14"&gt;around two&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="15,5"&gt;half past three&lt;/time&gt;</pre> <p>All of the examples of the <i>when</i> attribute in the <i>att.dateable.w3c</i> class are also valid with respect to this attribute.</p> <pre>He likes to be punctual. I said &lt;q&gt; &lt;time when-iso="12"&gt;around noon&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/q&gt;, and he showed up at &lt;time when-iso="12:00:00"&gt;12 O'clock&lt;/time&gt; on the dot.</pre> <p>The second occurrence of <code>&lt;time&gt;</code> could have been encoded with the <i>when</i> attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i> specification. The first occurrence could not.</p> <p><b>notBefore-iso</b> specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p><b>notAfter-iso</b> specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p><b>from-iso</b> indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p><b>to-iso</b> indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date &amp; time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>If both <i>when-iso</i> and <i>dur-iso</i> are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,</p>

	<pre>&lt;date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/&gt;</pre> <p>indicates the same time period as</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/&gt;</pre> <p>In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.</p>
--	---

### 2.3.9. att.dataable.w3c

<b>att.dataable.w3c</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i> . [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dataable</a> [ <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">place-Name</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>Attributes</b></p> <p><b>when</b> supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a>  Examples of W3C date, time, and date &amp; time formats.</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;date when="1945-10-24"&gt;24 Oct 45&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z"&gt;September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00"&gt;Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when="14:12:38"&gt;fourteen twelve and 38 seconds&lt;/time&gt; &lt;date when="1962-10"&gt;October of 1962&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="--06-12"&gt;June 12th&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="---01"&gt;the first of the month&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="--08"&gt;August&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="2006"&gt;MMVI&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="0056"&gt;AD 56&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="-0056"&gt;56 BC&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre> <p>This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the  &lt;date calendar="#julian"  when="1632-06-06"&gt;27th of May (old style)&lt;/date&gt;.</p> <pre>&lt;opener&gt; &lt;dateline&gt; &lt;placeName&gt;Dorchester, Village,&lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;date when="1828-03-02"&gt;March 2d. 1828.&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/dateline&gt; &lt;salute&gt;To Mrs. Cornell,&lt;/salute&gt; Sunday &lt;time when="12:00:00"&gt;noon.&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/opener&gt;</pre> <p><b>notBefore</b> specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p><b>notAfter</b> specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p><b>from</b> indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p><b>to</b> indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.  <b>Status</b> Optional</p>

	<b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.temporal.w3c</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notBefore @notAfter @from @to" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.dateable.w3c attributes.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01"&gt;28 May through 1 June 1863&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date &amp; time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i>, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is <code>yyyy-mm-dd</code>, but <code>yyyy</code>, <code>--mm</code>, <code>--dd</code>, <code>yyyy-mm</code>, or <code>--mm-dd</code> may also be used. For the time part, the form <code>hh:mm:ss</code> is used.</p> <p>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.</p>

## 2.3.10. att.datcat

<b>att.datcat</b> provides the <i>dcr:datcat</i> and <i>dcr:ValueDatcat</i> attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <a href="http://www.isocat.org/">http://www.isocat.org/</a> . [9.5.2. Lexical View 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<code>att.segLike[pc seg]</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>datcat</b> contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOCat.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>valueDatcat</b> contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOCat.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In this example <i>dcr:datcat</i> relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and <i>dcr:valueDatcat</i> the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOCat DCR at <a href="http://www.isocat.org">www.isocat.org</a>, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.</p> <pre>&lt;fs   xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr"&gt;   &lt;f name="POS"     dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345" fVal="#commonNoun"     dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/&gt; &lt;/fs&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <a href="http://www.isocat.org/12620/">http://www.isocat.org/12620/</a> ), which provides two attributes, <i>dcr:datcat</i> and <i>dcr:valueDatcat</i> .

### 2.3.11. att.declarable

<b>att.declarable</b> provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose <i>decls</i> attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">projectDesc</a> <a href="#">refsDecl</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>default</b> indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.truthValue</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>true</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> This element is selected if its parent is selected</p> <p><b>false</b></p> <p>This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]</p>
<b>Note</b>	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a <i>default</i> attribute with a value of true.

### 2.3.12. att.declaring

<b>att.declaring</b> provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">text</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>decls</b> identifies one or more <i>declarable elements</i> within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Note</b>	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

### 2.3.13. att.dimensions

<b>att.dimensions</b> provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">ex</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p><b>unit</b> names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>cm</b> (centimetres)</p> <p><b>mm</b> (millimetres)</p> <p><b>in</b></p>

		(inches)
		<b>line</b> lines of text
		<b>char</b> (characters) characters of text
quantity	specifies the length in the units specified	
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	<a href="#">teidata.numeric</a>
extent	indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.	
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	<a href="#">teidata.text</a>
		<code>&lt;gap extent="5 words"/&gt;</code>
		<code>&lt;height extent="half the page"/&gt;</code>
precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.	
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	<a href="#">teidata.certainty</a>
scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.	
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	<a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a>
	<b>Sample values include:</b>	<b>all</b> measurement applies to all instances.
		<b>most</b> measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
		<b>range</b> measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

### 2.3.14. att.docStatus

<b>att.docStatus</b> provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.		
<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a>	
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes	
	status	describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	<a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a>
	<b>Sample values include:</b>	<b>ap-proved</b> <b>can-di-date</b> <b>cleared</b> <b>dep-re-cat-ed</b>

	<b>draft</b> [Default] <b>em-</b> <b>bar-</b> <b>goed</b> <b>ex-</b> <b>pired</b> <b>frozen</b> <b>gal-</b> <b>ley</b> <b>pro-</b> <b>posed</b> <b>pub-</b> <b>lished</b> <b>rec-</b> <b>om-</b> <b>men-</b> <b>da-</b> <b>tion</b> <b>sub-</b> <b>mit-</b> <b>ted</b> <b>un-</b> <b>fin-</b> <b>ished</b> <b>with-</b> <b>drawn</b>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;revisionDesc status="published"&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-10-21"     status="published"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-08-02"     status="embargoed"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"     who="#MSM"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"     who="#LB"/&gt; &lt;/revisionDesc&gt; </pre>

### 2.3.15. att.editLike

<b>att.editLike</b> provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]					
<b>Module</b>	tei				
<b>Members</b>	att.transcriptional[del] birth corr date death ex expan location origDate origin persName person place placeName reg				
<b>Attributes</b>	<table> <tr> <td>Attributes</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>evidence</td><td> indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace  <b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>in-</b>  <b>ter-</b> there is internal evidence to support the interven-  <b>nal</b> tion. </td></tr> </table>	Attributes		evidence	indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace <b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>in-</b> <b>ter-</b> there is internal evidence to support the interven- <b>nal</b> tion.
Attributes					
evidence	indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace <b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>in-</b> <b>ter-</b> there is internal evidence to support the interven- <b>nal</b> tion.				

	<p><b>ex-</b> <b>ter-</b> there is external evidence to support the intervention.</p> <p><b>con-</b> <b>jec-</b> the intervention or interpretation has been made <b>ture</b> by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.</p> <p>Each pointer on the <i>source</i> (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <code>&lt;witness&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;msDesc&gt;</code>, or <code>&lt;bibl&gt;</code> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.</p>

## 2.3.16. att.edition

<b>att.edition</b> provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	cb lb pb
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>ed</b> (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.word</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>edRef</b> (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by whitespace</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;l&gt;Of Mans First Disobedience,&lt;lb ed="1674"/&gt; and&lt;lb ed="1667"/&gt; the Fruit&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;Of that Forbidden Tree, whose&lt;lb ed="1667 1674"/&gt; mortal tast&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;Brought Death into the World,&lt;lb ed="1667"/&gt; and all&lt;lb ed="1674"/&gt; our woe,&lt;/l&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;listBibl&gt;   &lt;bibl xml:id="stapledon1937"&gt;     &lt;author&gt;Olaf Stapledon&lt;/author&gt;,     &lt;title&gt;Starmaker&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;publisher&gt;Methuen&lt;/publisher&gt;, &lt;date&gt;1937&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;bibl xml:id="stapledon1968"&gt;     &lt;author&gt;Olaf Stapledon&lt;/author&gt;,     &lt;title&gt;Starmaker&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;publisher&gt;Dover&lt;/publisher&gt;, &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/listBibl&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;p&gt;Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the&lt;pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/&gt;essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest and endless novelty of action, ... I saw myself still preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid con-&lt;pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/&gt;sciousness;&lt;/p&gt;</pre>

## 2.3.17. att.fragmentable

<b>att.fragmentable</b> provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[pc seg] l p
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes



## 2.3.18. att.global

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<p>TEI abbr app author availability bibl birth body cRefPattern cb choice corr country date death del div encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent fileDesc foliation geo head height hi history idno incipit l layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit location locus msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note objectDesc orig origDate origin p particDesc pb pc persName person physDesc place placeName profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher rdg ref refsDecl reg repository rs said scriptDesc scriptNote seg settingDesc settlement sic sourceDesc support supportDesc surname teiCorpus teiHeader text title titleStmt variantEncoding width witness</p>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp) <a href="#">att.global.analytic</a> (@ana) <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@cert, @resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>xml:id</b> (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> ID</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>xml:id</i> attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10. Reference Systems.</p> <p><b>n</b> (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.</p> <p><b>xml:lang</b> (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.language</a></p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&lt;p&gt; ... The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last &lt;foreign xml:lang="rap"&gt;ariki&lt;/foreign&gt; or chief (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.&lt;/p&gt;</pre> </div> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>xml:lang</i> value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify <i>xml:lang</i> at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <a href="#">&lt;teiHeader&gt;</a> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.</p> <p>The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <a href="http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry">http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry</a>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <a href="http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/">http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/</a>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <a href="https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php">https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php</a>.</p> <p>The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -</p>

	<p>x-), a <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element with a matching value for its <i>ident</i> attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.</p>
xml:base	<p>provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <pre>&lt;div type="bibl"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Bibliography&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/"&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;author&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Landon, Letitia Elizabeth&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/author&gt;       &lt;ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm"&gt;         &lt;title&gt;The Vow of the Peacock&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/ref&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;author&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Compton, Margaret Clephane&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/author&gt;       &lt;ref target="NortMIrene.sgm"&gt;         &lt;title&gt;Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/ref&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;author&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Taylor, Jane&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/author&gt;       &lt;ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm"&gt;         &lt;title&gt;Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/ref&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/listBibl&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre>
xml:space	<p>signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>fault</b> signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable</li> <li><b>preserve</b> indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle <code>xml:space</code> correctly.</p>

### 2.3.19. att.global.analytic

<b>att.global.analytic</b> provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses 17.3. Spans and Interpretations]	
<b>Module</b>	analysis
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global[TEI abbr app author availability bibl birth body cRefPattern cb choice corr country date death del div encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent fileDesc foliation geo head height hi history idno incipit l layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit location locus msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note objectDesc orig origDate origin p particDesc pb pc persName person physDesc place placeName profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher rdg ref refsDecl reg repository rs said scriptDesc scriptNote seg settingDesc settlement sic sourceDesc support supportDesc surname teiCorpus teiHeader text title titleStmt variantEncoding width witness]</a>

<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>ana</b> (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the <i>ana</i> attribute appears.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.</p>
-------------------	---

### 2.3.20. att.global.change

**att.global.change** supplies the *change* attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.global</u> [ <u>TEI</u> <u>abbr</u> <u>app</u> <u>author</u> <u>availability</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>birth</u> <u>body</u> <u>cRefPattern</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>death</u> <u>del</u> <u>div</u> <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>ex</u> <u>expan</u> <u>explicit</u> <u>extent</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>geo</u> <u>head</u> <u>height</u> <u>hi</u> <u>history</u> <u>idno</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>l</u> <u>layout</u> <u>layoutDesc</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lem</u> <u>lg</u> <u>licence</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>location</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msContents</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>msIdentifier</u> <u>msItemStruct</u> <u>note</u> <u>objectDesc</u> <u>orig</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>p</u> <u>particDesc</u> <u>pb</u> <u>pc</u> <u>persName</u> <u>person</u> <u>physDesc</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>projectDesc</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>ref</u> <u>refsDecl</u> <u>reg</u> <u>repository</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>scriptDesc</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>seg</u> <u>settingDesc</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sic</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>support</u> <u>supportDesc</u> <u>surname</u> <u>teiCorpus</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>text</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>variantEncoding</u> <u>width</u> <u>witness</u> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>change</b> points to one or more &lt;change&gt; elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>

### 2.3.21. att.global.facs

**att.global.facs** provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.global</u> [ <u>TEI</u> <u>abbr</u> <u>app</u> <u>author</u> <u>availability</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>birth</u> <u>body</u> <u>cRefPattern</u> <u>cb</u> <u>choice</u> <u>corr</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>death</u> <u>del</u> <u>div</u> <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>ex</u> <u>expan</u> <u>explicit</u> <u>extent</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>geo</u> <u>head</u> <u>height</u> <u>hi</u> <u>history</u> <u>idno</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>l</u> <u>layout</u> <u>layoutDesc</u> <u>lb</u> <u>lem</u> <u>lg</u> <u>licence</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>location</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msContents</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>msIdentifier</u> <u>msItemStruct</u> <u>note</u> <u>objectDesc</u> <u>orig</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>p</u> <u>particDesc</u> <u>pb</u> <u>pc</u> <u>persName</u> <u>person</u> <u>physDesc</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>projectDesc</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>rdg</u> <u>ref</u> <u>refsDecl</u> <u>reg</u> <u>repository</u> <u>rs</u> <u>said</u> <u>scriptDesc</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>seg</u> <u>settingDesc</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sic</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>support</u> <u>supportDesc</u> <u>surname</u> <u>teiCorpus</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>text</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>variantEncoding</u> <u>width</u> <u>witness</u> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>facs</b> (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>

### 2.3.22. att.global.link

**att.global.link** provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module	linking
Members	<p>att.global[TEI abbr app author availability bibl birth body cRefPattern cb choice corr country date death del div encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent fileDesc foliation geo head height hi history idno incipit l layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit location locus msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note objectDesc orig origDate origin p particDesc pb pc persName person physDesc place placeName profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher rdg ref refsDecl reg repository rs said scriptDesc scriptNote seg settingDesc settlement sic sourceDesc support supportDesc surname teiCorpus teiHeader text title titleStmt variantEncoding width witness]</p>
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>corresp</b> (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> <pre> &lt;group&gt;   &lt;text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"     xml:lang="mi"&gt;     &lt;body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1"&gt;       &lt;div type="chapter"&gt;         &lt;head&gt;He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.&lt;/head&gt;         &lt;p&gt;...&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;     &lt;/body&gt;   &lt;/text&gt;   &lt;text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"     xml:lang="en"&gt;     &lt;body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"       corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"&gt;       &lt;div type="chapter"&gt;         &lt;head&gt;An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.&lt;/head&gt;         &lt;p&gt;...&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;     &lt;/body&gt;   &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/group&gt; </pre> <p>In this example a <code>&lt;group&gt;</code> contains two <code>&lt;text&gt;</code>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using <i>corresp</i>. The language is indicated using <i>xml:lang</i>, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the <i>corresp</i> and the tag pointed to by the <i>corresp</i> inherit the value from their immediate parent.</p> <pre> &lt;!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --&gt;&lt;place xml:id="LOND1"   corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1"&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;London&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;desc&gt;The city of London...&lt;/desc&gt; &lt;/place&gt; &lt;!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" --&gt; &lt;person xml:id="LOND2"   corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1"&gt;   &lt;persName type="lit"&gt;London&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;note&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Allegorical character representing the city of &lt;placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1"&gt;London&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/note&gt; &lt;/person&gt; &lt;person xml:id="GENI1"   corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2"&gt;   &lt;persName type="lit"&gt;London's Genius&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;note&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Personification of London's genius. Appears as an allegorical character in mayoral shows.   &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/note&gt; &lt;/person&gt; </pre> <p>In this example, a <code>&lt;place&gt;</code> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <code>&lt;person&gt;</code> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.</p>

### 2.3.23. att.global.rendition

<b>att.global.rendition</b> provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	att.global[TEI abbr app author availability bibl birth body cRefPattern cb choice corr country date death del div encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent fileDesc foliation geo head height hi history idno incipit l layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit location locus msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note objectDesc orig origDate origin p particDesc pb pc persName person physDesc place placeName profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher rdg ref refsDecl reg repository rs said scriptDesc scriptNote seg settingDesc settlement sic sourceDesc support supportDesc surname teiCorpus teiHeader text title titleStmt variantEncoding width witness]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>rend</b> (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"&gt;   &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle,   &lt;lb/&gt;On Her &lt;lb/&gt;   &lt;hi rend="case(mixed)"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt; &lt;/head&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the <i>rend</i> attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the <i>rend</i> attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.</p> <p><b>style</b> contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <pre>&lt;head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps"&gt;   &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her   &lt;lb/&gt;   &lt;hi style="font-variant: normal"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt; &lt;/head&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> Unlike the attribute values of <i>rend</i>, which uses whitespace as a separator, the <i>style</i> attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.</p> <p>The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <code>&lt;styleDefDecl&gt;</code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>If <i>style</i> and <i>rendition</i> are both present on an element, then <i>style</i> overrides or complements <i>rendition</i>. <i>style</i> should not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.</p> <p><b>rendition</b> points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;head rendition="#ac #sc"&gt;   &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her</pre>

```

<lb/>
<hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
  scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
  scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
  scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>

```

**Note**

The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

## 2.3.24. att.global.responsibility

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> [ <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cRefPattern</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">ex</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">pc</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">pro-fileDesc</a> <a href="#">projectDesc</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">refsDecl</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiCorpus</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">variantEncoding</a> <a href="#">width</a> <a href="#">witness</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>cert</b> (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.probCert</a></p> <p><b>resp</b> (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> To reduce the ambiguity of a <i>resp</i> pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that <i>resp</i> be used to point not to an agent (<a href="#">&lt;person&gt;</a> or <a href="#">&lt;org&gt;</a>) but to a <a href="#">&lt;respStmt&gt;</a>, <a href="#">&lt;author&gt;</a>, <a href="#">&lt;editor&gt;</a> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <a href="#">&lt;respStmt&gt;</a>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> Blessed are the &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;sic&gt;cheesemakers&lt;/sic&gt;   &lt;corr resp="#editor" cert="high"&gt;peacemakers&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt;: for they shall be called the children of God. </pre>

Example	<pre> &lt;!-- in the &lt;text&gt; ... --&gt;&lt;lg&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;l&gt;Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing   sla&lt;choice&gt;     &lt;sic&gt;n&lt;/sic&gt;     &lt;corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber"&gt;u&lt;/corr&gt;   &lt;/choice&gt;es,&lt;/l&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;!-- in the &lt;teiHeader&gt; ... --&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber"&gt;   &lt;resp when="2014"&gt;Transcriber&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Janelle Jenstad&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; </pre>
---------	---

## 2.3.25. att.global.source

**att.global.source** provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

Module	tei
Members	<a href="#">att.global</a> [ <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cRefPattern</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">choice</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">ex</a> <a href="#">expan</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">geo</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">l</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lem</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">listWit</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orig</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">pc</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">profileDesc</a> <a href="#">projectDesc</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">rdg</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">refsDecl</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">said</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">sic</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiCorpus</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">variantEncoding</a> <a href="#">width</a> <a href="#">witness</a> ]
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>source</b> specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>source</i> attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <code>&lt;schemaSpec&gt;</code> or <code>&lt;moduleRef&gt;</code> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.</p> <p>On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p> <p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <code>&lt;prefixDef&gt;</code>.</p> <p>If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.</p>
Example	<pre> &lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; As Willard McCarty (&lt;bibl xml:id="mcc_2012"&gt;2012, p.2&lt;/bibl&gt;) tells us, &lt;quote source="#mcc_2012"&gt;   term.&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
Example	<pre> &lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;quote source="#chicago_15_ed"&gt;Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the   less we seem to know.&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed"&gt;   &lt;title level="m"&gt;The Chicago Manual of Style&lt;/title&gt;,   &lt;edition&gt;15th edition&lt;/edition&gt;. &lt;pubPlace&gt;Chicago&lt;/pubPlace&gt;: &lt;publisher&gt;University of     Chicago Press&lt;/publisher&gt; (&lt;date&gt;2003&lt;/date&gt;), &lt;biblScope unit="page"&gt;p.147&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; </pre>
Example	<pre> &lt;elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/&gt; </pre>

	Include in the schema an element named <code>&lt;p&gt;</code> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;schemaSpec ident="myODD"   source="mycompiledODD.xml"&gt;   &lt;!-- further declarations specifying the components required --&gt; &lt;/schemaSpec&gt;</pre> <p>Create a schema using components taken from the file <code>mycompiledODD.xml</code>.</p>

### 2.3.26. att.handFeatures

<b>att.handFeatures</b> provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]													
<b>Module</b>	tei												
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">scriptNote</a>												
<b>Attributes</b>	<table> <tr> <td>scribe</td><td>gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.name</a></td></tr> <tr> <td>scribeRef</td><td>points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <a href="#">&lt;person&gt;</a> element elsewhere in the description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</td></tr> <tr> <td>script</td><td>characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i>, <i>copperplate</i>, <i>Chancery</i>, <i>Italian</i>, etc. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.name</a> separated by whitespace</td></tr> <tr> <td>scriptRef</td><td>points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <a href="#">&lt;scriptNote&gt;</a> element elsewhere in the description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</td></tr> <tr> <td>medium</td><td>describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i>, or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i> <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> separated by whitespace</td></tr> <tr> <td>scope</td><td>specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> <b>Legal values</b> <b>sole</b> <b>are:</b> only this hand is used throughout the manuscript <b>major</b> this hand is used through most of the manuscript <b>minor</b> this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript</td></tr> </table>	scribe	gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.name</a>	scribeRef	points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <a href="#">&lt;person&gt;</a> element elsewhere in the description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space	script	characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i> , <i>copperplate</i> , <i>Chancery</i> , <i>Italian</i> , etc. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.name</a> separated by whitespace	scriptRef	points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <a href="#">&lt;scriptNote&gt;</a> element elsewhere in the description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space	medium	describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i> , or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i> <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> separated by whitespace	scope	specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> <b>Legal values</b> <b>sole</b> <b>are:</b> only this hand is used throughout the manuscript <b>major</b> this hand is used through most of the manuscript <b>minor</b> this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript
scribe	gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.name</a>												
scribeRef	points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <a href="#">&lt;person&gt;</a> element elsewhere in the description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space												
script	characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i> , <i>copperplate</i> , <i>Chancery</i> , <i>Italian</i> , etc. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.name</a> separated by whitespace												
scriptRef	points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <a href="#">&lt;scriptNote&gt;</a> element elsewhere in the description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space												
medium	describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i> , or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i> <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> separated by whitespace												
scope	specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> <b>Legal values</b> <b>sole</b> <b>are:</b> only this hand is used throughout the manuscript <b>major</b> this hand is used through most of the manuscript <b>minor</b> this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript												
<b>Note</b>	Usually either <i>script</i> or <i>scriptRef</i> , and similarly, either <i>scribe</i> or <i>scribeRef</i> , will be supplied.												

### 2.3.27. att.internetMedia

<b>att.internetMedia</b> provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.
--



<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">ref</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>mimeType</b> (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In this example <i>mimeType</i> is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.</p> <pre>&lt;ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The <i>mimeType</i> attribute must have a value taken from this list.</p>

### 2.3.28. att.lexicographic.normalized

<b>att.lexicographic.normalized</b> provides the <i>norm</i> and <i>orig</i> attributes for usage within word-level elements in the analysis module and within lexicographic microstructure in the dictionaries module.	
<b>Module</b>	analysis
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.linguistic[pc]</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>norm</b> (normalized) provides the normalized/standardized form of information present in the source text in a non-normalized form</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <p>Normalization of part-of-speech information within a dictionary entry.</p> <pre>&lt;gramGrp&gt;   &lt;pos norm="noun"&gt;n&lt;/pos&gt; &lt;/gramGrp&gt;</pre> <p>Normalization of a source form in a tokenized historical corpus.</p> <pre>&lt;s&gt;   &lt;w&gt;for&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;w norm="virtue's"&gt;vertues&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;w&gt;sake&lt;/w&gt; &lt;/s&gt;  &lt;s&gt;   &lt;w norm="persuasion"&gt;perswasion&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;w&gt;of&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;w norm="Unity"&gt;Vnitie&lt;/w&gt; &lt;/s&gt;</pre> <p>Example of normalization from Aviso. Relation oder Zeitung. Wolfenbüttel, 1609. In: Deutsches Textarchiv.</p> <pre>&lt;s&gt;   &lt;w norm="freiwillig"&gt;freywillig&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;pc norm=","     join="left"&gt;/&lt;/pc&gt;   &lt;w norm="unbedrängt"&gt;vnbedra#ngt&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;w norm="und"&gt;vnd&lt;/w&gt;   &lt;w norm="unverhindert"&gt;vnuerhindert&lt;/w&gt; &lt;/s&gt;  &lt;w norm="Teil"&gt;Theyll&lt;/w&gt;  &lt;w norm="Freude"&gt;Frewde&lt;/w&gt;</pre> <p><b>orig</b> (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p>

	<p><b>Datatype</b>    <u>teidata.text</u></p> <p>Example from a language documentation project of the Mixtepec-Mixtec language (ISO 639-3: 'mix'). This is a use case where speakers spell something incorrectly but we would like to preserve it for any number of reasons, the use of <i>orig</i> is essential and could have uses for both the speaker to see past mistakes, researchers to get insight into how untrained speakers write their language instinctually (in contrast to prescribed convention), etc.:</p> <pre>&lt;w orig="ntsa sia'i"&gt;ntsasia'i&lt;/w&gt;</pre> <p>Example from the EarlyPrint project. Fragment of text where obvious errors have been corrected but the original forms remain recorded:</p> <pre>&lt;w lemma="he"   pos="pns"   xml:id="blafj-003-a-0950"&gt;he&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w lemma="have"   pos="vvz"   xml:id="blafj-003-a-0960"&gt;hath&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w lemma="bring"   pos="vvn"   xml:id="blafj-003-a-0970"&gt;brought&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w lemma="forth"   pos="av"   xml:id="blafj-003-a-0980"   orig="sorth"&gt;forth&lt;/w&gt;</pre> <p>An example from the EarlyPrint project showing the use of both <i>norm</i> and <i>orig</i>. The <i>orig</i> attribute preserves the original version (sometimes with spelling errors, often with printer abbreviations), the element content resolves printer abbreviations but retains the original orthography, and the <i>norm</i> attribute holds normalized values:</p> <pre>&lt;w lemma="commandment"   pos="nl"   norm="commandment"   xml:id="b9avr-018-a-7720"   orig="commandeme#t"&gt;commandement&lt;/w&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	It needs to be stressed that the two attributes in this class are meant for strictly lexicographic and linguistic uses, and not for editorial interventions. For the latter, the mechanism based on <u>&lt;choice&gt;</u> , <u>&lt;orig&gt;</u> , and <u>&lt;reg&gt;</u> needs to be employed.

### 2.3.29. att.linguistic

<b>att.linguistic</b> provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically <u>&lt;w&gt;</u> and <u>&lt;pc&gt;</u> in the analysis module. [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]	
<b>Module</b>	analysis
<b>Members</b>	<u>pc</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.lexicographic.normalized</u> (@norm, @orig)</p> <p><b>lemma</b> provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.</p> <p><b>Status</b>            Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b>        <u>teidata.text</u></p> <pre>&lt;w lemma="wife"&gt;wives&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w lemma="Arznei"&gt;Artzeneyen&lt;/w&gt;</pre> <p><b>lemmaRef</b> provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.</p> <p><b>Status</b>            Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b>        <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <pre>&lt;w type="verb"   lemma="hit"   lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml"&gt;hitt&lt;m type="suffix"&gt;ing&lt;/m&gt; &lt;/w&gt;</pre>

pos

(part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a token (i.e. information on whether it is a noun, adjective, or verb), usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS, for English: CLAWS, for Polish: NKJP, etc.).

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.text](#)

The German sentence ‘Wir fahren in den Urlaub.’ tagged with the Stuttgart-Tuebingen-Tagset (STTS).

```
<S>
<w pos="PPER">Wir</w>
<w pos="VVFIN">fahren</w>
<w pos="APPR">in</w>
<w pos="ART">den</w>
<w pos="NN">Urlaub</w>
<w pos="$. ">.</w>
</S>
```

The English sentence ‘We’re going to Brazil.’ tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged inline (with significant whitespace).

```
<p><w pos="PNP">We</w><w pos="VBB">'re</w> <w pos="VVG">going</w> <w pos="PRP">to</w> <w po
```

The English sentence ‘We’re going on vacation to Brazil for a month!’ tagged with the CLAWS-7 tagset and arranged sequentially.

```
<p>
<w pos="PPIS2">We</w>
<w pos="VBR">'re</w>
<w pos="VVG">going</w>
<w pos="II ">on</w>
<w pos="NN1">vacation</w>
<w pos="II ">to</w>
<w pos="NPl">Brazil</w>
<w pos="IF">for</w>
<w pos="AT1">a</w>
<w pos="NNT1">month</w>
<pc pos="! ">!</pc>
</p>
```

msd

(morphosyntactic description) supplies morphosyntactic information for a token, usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS-large tagset; for a feature description system designed as (pragmatically) universal, see Universal Features).

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.text](#)

```
<ab>
<w pos="PPER"
  msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
<w pos="VVFIN"
  msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
<w pos="APPR"
  msd="--">in</w>
<w pos="ART"
  msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg">den</w>
<w pos="NN"
  msd="Masc.Akk.Sg">Urlaub</w>
<pc pos="$. ">.</pc>
msd="--">.</pc>
</ab>
```

join

when present, it provides information on whether the token in question is adjacent to another, and if so, on which side. The definition of this attribute is adapted from ISO MAF (Morpho-syntactic Annotation Framework), ISO 24611:2012.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.text](#)

**Legal values** no

**are:** (the token is not adjacent to another)

**left**

(there is no whitespace on the left side of the token)

	<p><b>right</b> (there is no whitespace on the right side of the token)</p> <p><b>both</b> (there is no whitespace on either side of the token)</p> <p><b>over-</b> <b>lap</b> (the token overlaps with another; other devices (specifying the extent and the area of overlap) are needed to more precisely locate this token in the character stream)</p> <p>The example below assumes that the lack of whitespace is marked redundantly, by using the appropriate values of <i>join</i>.</p> <pre>&lt;s&gt; &lt;pc join="right"&gt;"&lt;/pc&gt; &lt;w join="left"&gt;Friends&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w&gt;will&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w&gt;be&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w join="right"&gt;friends&lt;/w&gt; &lt;pc join="both"&gt;.&lt;/pc&gt; &lt;pc join="left"&gt;"&lt;/pc&gt; &lt;/s&gt;</pre> <p>Note that a project may make a decision to only indicate lack of whitespace in one direction, or do that non-redundantly. The existing proposal is the broadest possible, on the assumption that we adopt the "streamable view", where all the information on the current element needs to be represented locally.</p> <p>The English sentence 'We're going on vacation.' tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged sequentially, tagged on the assumption that only the lack of the preceding whitespace is indicated.</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;w pos="PNP"&gt;We&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="VBB"   join="left"&gt;'re&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="VVG"&gt;going&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="PRP"&gt;on&lt;/w&gt; &lt;w pos="NN1"&gt;vacation&lt;/w&gt; &lt;pc pos="PUN"   join="left"&gt;.&lt;/pc&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation for discussion.

### 2.3.30. att.msExcerpt

<b>att.msExcerpt</b> (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Members</b>	explicit incipit msContents msItemStruct
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>defective</b> indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.xTruthValue</a></p>
<b>Note</b>	In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

### 2.3.31. att.naming

<b>att.naming</b> provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.personal</u> [ <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>surname</u> ] <u>author</u> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>repository</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref)</p> <p><b>role</b> may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>nymRef</b> (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (<i>nym</i>) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.</p>

### 2.3.32. att.notated

<b>att.notated</b> provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>seg</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>notation</b> names the notation used for the content of the element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p>

### 2.3.33. att.patternReplacement

<b>att.patternReplacement</b> provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Members</b>	<u>cRefPattern</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>matchPattern</b> specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pattern</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> The syntax used should follow that defined by W3C XPath syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the <i>replacementPattern</i> attribute.</p>

	<p>replacementPattern specifies a ‘replacement pattern’, that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the <i>matchPattern</i> which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.replacement</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> The strings \$1, \$2 etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by <i>matchPattern</i> (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression. If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as %24.</p>
--	--

### 2.3.34. att.personal

<b>att.personal</b> (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.naming</a> (@role, @nymRef) (<a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@key, @ref))</p> <p><b>full</b> indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <b>yes</b> the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]</p> <p><b>abb</b> (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.</p> <p><b>init</b> (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.</p> <p><b>sort</b> specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.count</a></p>

### 2.3.35. att.placement

<b>att.placement</b> provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">note</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>place</b> specifies where this item is placed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Recommended</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>be-</b> <b>low</b> below the line</p>

	<p><b>bot-</b> <b>tom</b> at the foot of the page</p> <p><b>mar-</b> <b>gin</b> in the margin (left, right, or both)</p> <p><b>top</b> at the top of the page</p> <p><b>op-</b> <b>po-</b> on the opposite, i.e. facing, page <b>site</b></p> <p><b>over-</b> <b>leaf</b> on the other side of the leaf</p> <p><b>above</b> above the line</p> <p><b>end</b> at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.</p> <p><b>in-</b> <b>line</b> within the body of the text.</p> <p><b>in-</b> <b>space</b> a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.</p> <pre>&lt;add place="margin"&gt;[An addition written in the margin]&lt;/add&gt; &lt;add place="bottom opposite"&gt;[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]&lt;/add&gt;  &lt;note place="bottom"&gt;Ibid, p.7&lt;/note&gt;</pre>
--	--

2.3.36. att.pointing

<b>att.pointing</b> provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">ref</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>targetLang</b> specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by <i>target</i>, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.language</a></p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"&gt;&lt;sch:assert test="@target"&gt;@targetLang should only be used on &lt;sch:name/&gt; if @target is specified.&lt;/sch:assert&gt;&lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p> <pre>&lt;linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp"&gt;   &lt;ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"     target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"     type="tuv"     targetLang="pl"/&gt;   &lt;ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"     target="sw/UDHR/text.xml#sw_txt_1-head"     type="tuv"     targetLang="sw"/&gt; &lt;/linkGrp&gt;</pre> <p>In the example above, the &lt;linkGrp&gt; combines pointers at parallel fragments of the <i>Universal Declaration of Human Rights</i>: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains x-), a &lt;language&gt; element with a matching value for its <i>ident</i> attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to</p>

	target	<p>document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.</p> <p>specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.</p>
	evaluate	<p>specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values all are:</b></p> <p><b>one</b> if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.</p> <p><b>one</b> if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.</p> <p><b>none</b> no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.</p>

## 2.3.37. att.ranging

<b>att.ranging</b> provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.dimensions</u> [ <u>birth</u> <u>date</u> <u>death</u> <u>del</u> <u>ex</u> <u>height</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>atLeast</b> gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.numeric</u></p> <p><b>atMost</b> gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.numeric</u></p> <p><b>min</b> where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.numeric</u></p> <p><b>max</b> where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.</p>



	<p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> <p>confidence specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i>, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.probability</a></p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from &lt;del rend="overstrike"&gt; &lt;gap reason="illegible"   extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/&gt; &lt;/del&gt; Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.</pre>

### 2.3.38. att.segLike

<b>att.segLike</b> provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">pc seg</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.datcat</a> (@datcat, @valueDatcat) <a href="#">att.fragmentable</a></p> <p>function characterizes the function of the segment.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a &lt;cl&gt;, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a &lt;phr&gt;, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.</p>

### 2.3.39. att.sortable

<b>att.sortable</b> provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">bibl idno listBibl listPerson listPlace listWit msDesc person place witness</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p>sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.word</a></p> <pre>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen &lt;index indexName="NAMES"&gt;   &lt;term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen"&gt;Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya&lt;/term&gt; &lt;/index&gt; b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent</p> <p>Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for <i>4-H</i> will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and <i>McCoy</i> may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while <i>A1</i>, <i>A4</i>, and <i>A5</i> may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of</p>

the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

### 2.3.40. att.spanning

<b>att.spanning</b> provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>cb</u> <u>lb</u> <u>pb</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>spanTo</b> indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <p><b>Schematron</b> The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element  &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]"&gt;The element indicated by @spanTo (&lt;sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/&gt;) must follow the current element  &lt;sch:name/&gt; &lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p>
<b>Note</b>	The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the <i>spanTo</i> attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

### 2.3.41. att.textCritical

<b>att.textCritical</b> defines a set of attributes common to all elements representing variant readings in text critical work. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Members</b>	<u>lem</u> <u>rdg</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.written</u> (@hand)</p> <p><b>cause</b> classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Sample values include:</b> homeoteleuton  homeoarchy  paleography  Confusion  haplography</p>

	<p><b>dit-</b> <b>tog-</b> <b>ra-</b> <b>phy</b></p> <p><b>falseEmen-</b> <b>da-</b> <b>tion</b></p> <p>require points to other readings that are required when adopting the current reading or lemma.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Note</b>	This element class defines attributes inherited by <code>&lt;rdg&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;lem&gt;</code> , and <code>&lt;rdgGrp&gt;</code> .

## 2.3.42. att.transcriptional

<b>att.transcriptional</b> provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<code>del</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <code>att.editLike</code> (@evidence) <code>att.written</code> (@hand)</p> <p><b>status</b> indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.enumerated</code></p> <p><b>Sample values include:</b></p> <p><b>dupli-</b> all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.</p> <p><b>dupli-</b> part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original</p> <p><b>partial</b></p> <p><b>ex-</b> Some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.</p> <p><b>ex-</b> Some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.</p> <p><b>short-</b> some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.</p> <p><b>short-</b> some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.</p> <p><b>partial</b> some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.</p>

		<p><b>un-</b> <b>re-</b> the deletion is not faulty.[Default] <b>mark-</b> <b>able</b></p> <p><b>Note</b> Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.</p>
	cause	<p>documents the presumed cause for the intervention.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p>
	seq	<p>(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.count</a></p>

### 2.3.43. att.typed

<p><b>att.typed</b> provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.5.1. Referring Strings 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">abbr</a> <a href="#">app</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">birth</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">corr</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">death</a> <a href="#">del</a> <a href="#">div</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">lg</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">Bibl</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">location</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">pc</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">place-Name</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">reg</a> <a href="#">rs</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">settlement</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiCorpus</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>type</b> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <pre>&lt;div type="verse"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Night in Tarras&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;lg type="stanza"&gt;     &lt;l&gt;At evening tramping on the hot white road&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;...&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/lg&gt;   &lt;lg type="stanza"&gt;     &lt;l&gt;A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;...&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>type</i> attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of <b>att.typed</b>, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p> <p><b>subtype</b> provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>subtype</i> attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its <i>type</i> attribute.</p>

<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="@type"&gt;The &lt;sch:name/&gt; element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <code>&lt;valList&gt;</code> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

### 2.3.44. att.witnessed

<b>att.witnessed</b> supplies the attribute used to identify the witnesses supporting a particular reading in a critical apparatus. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
<b>Module</b>	textcrit
<b>Members</b>	<code>lem rdg</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>wit</b> (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted. This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses. Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child <code>&lt;wit&gt;</code> element.</p>

### 2.3.45. att.written

<b>att.written</b> provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<code>att.textCritical[lem rdg] att.transcriptional[del] div head hi note p seg text</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>hand</b> points to a <code>&lt;handNote&gt;</code> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.pointer</code></p>

## 2.4. Macros

### 2.4.1. macro.paraContent

<b>macro.paraContent</b> (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<code>corr del hi orig p ref reg seg sic title</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="lg"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.lLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.paraContent = (   text     model.gLike     model.phrase     model.inter     model.global     lg     model.lLike )* </pre>

## 2.4.2. macro.phraseSeq

<b>macro.phraseSeq</b> (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>abbr</u> <u>author</u> <u>birth</u> <u>country</u> <u>death</u> <u>expan</u> <u>explicit</u> <u>extent</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>persName</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.attributable"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.phraseSeq = ( text   model.gLike   model.attributable   model.phrase   model.global ) * </pre>

## 2.4.3. macro.phraseSeq.limited

<b>macro.phraseSeq.limited</b> (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>repository</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text   model.limitedPhrase   model.global ) * </pre>

## 2.4.4. macro.specialPara

<b>macro.specialPara</b> ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>licence</u> <u>note</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>said</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>support</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.divPart"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.specialPara = (   text     model.gLike     model.phrase     model.inter     model.divPart     model.global )* </pre>

## 2.4.5. macro.xtext

<b>macro.xtext</b> (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	ex height width
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.xtext = ( text   model.gLike ) * </pre>

## 2.5. Datatypes

### 2.5.1. teidata.certainty

<b>teidata.certainty</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	teidata.probCert
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;valList type="closed"&gt; &lt;valItem ident="high"/&gt; &lt;valItem ident="medium"/&gt; &lt;valItem ident="low"/&gt; &lt;valItem ident="unknown"/&gt; &lt;/valList&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.certainty = "high"   "medium"   "low"   "unknown" </pre>
<b>Note</b>	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

### 2.5.2. teidata.count

<b>teidata.count</b> defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">layout/@columns</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">layout/@streams</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">layout/@writtenLines</a></li> </ul>

<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

### 2.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

<b>teidata.duration.iso</b> defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;time dur-iso="PT0.75H"&gt;three-quarters of an hour&lt;/time&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;date dur-iso="P1.5D"&gt;a day and a half&lt;/date&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;date dur-iso="P14D"&gt;a fortnight&lt;/date&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;time dur-iso="PT0.02S"&gt;20 ms&lt;/time&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see ISO 8601 <i>Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times</i>.</p>

### 2.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

<b>teidata.duration.w3c</b> defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="duration"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;time dur="PT45M"&gt;forty-five minutes&lt;/time&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;date dur="P1DT12H"&gt;a day and a half&lt;/date&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;date dur="P7D"&gt;a week&lt;/date&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;time dur="PT0.02S"&gt;20 ms&lt;/time&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p>



For complete details, see the W3C specification.

## 2.5.5. teidata.enumerated

**teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>app</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>availability</u>/<u>@status</u></li> <li>• <u>birth</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>corr</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>country</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>death</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>del</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>div</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>height</u>/<u>@unit</u></li> <li>• <u>note</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>pc</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>placeName</u>/<u>@full</u></li> <li>• <u>rdg</u>/<u>@cause</u></li> <li>• <u>seg</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>variantEncoding</u>/<u>@method</u></li> <li>• <u>variantEncoding</u>/<u>@location</u></li> <li>• <u>width</u>/<u>@unit</u></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef key="teidata.word"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.enumerated = teidata.word</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.</p> <p>Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <code>&lt;valList&gt;</code> element.</p>

## 2.5.6. teidata.language

**teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>seg</u>/<u>@xml:lang</u></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="language"/&gt;     &lt;valList&gt;       &lt;valItem ident=""/&gt;     &lt;/valList&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.language = xsd:language   ( "" )</pre>

Note	<p>The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.</p> <p>A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or <i>subtags</i> separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.</p> <p><b>language</b> The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <a href="http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry">http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry</a>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.</p> <p><b>script</b> The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <a href="http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html">http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html</a>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.</p> <p><b>region</b> Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <a href="https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/">https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/</a>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <a href="http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm">http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm</a>.</p> <p><b>variant</b> An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.</p> <p><b>extension</b> An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.</p> <p><b>private use</b> An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter <i>x</i> (i.e., starts with <i>x-</i>) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element must be present in the TEI header.</p> <p>There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.</p> <p>Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with <i>x-</i>, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>Examples include</p> <p><b>sn</b> Shona</p> <p><b>zh-TW</b> Taiwanese</p> <p><b>zh-Hant-HK</b> Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong</p> <p><b>en-SL</b> English as spoken in Sierra Leone</p> <p><b>pl</b> Polish</p> <p><b>es-MX</b> Spanish as spoken in Mexico</p>
------	---

	<b>es-419</b> Spanish as spoken in Latin America The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.
--	--

## 2.5.7. teidata.name

<b>teidata.name</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="Name"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.name = xsd:Name</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name">http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name</a> ): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

## 2.5.8. teidata.numeric

<b>teidata.numeric</b> defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="double"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction="(\-?[0-9]+\-?[0-9]+)"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="decimal"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.numeric =   xsd:double   token { pattern = "(\\-?[0-9]+\\-?[0-9]+)" }   xsd:decimal</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.</p> <p>To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.</p> <p>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.</p>

## 2.5.9. teidata.outputMeasurement

<b>teidata.outputMeasurement</b> defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="([0-9]+)?\d+(\.0+)?(cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd rem vw vh vm)"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.outputMeasurement =   token</pre>

	<pre>{   pattern = "[\\-+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd rem vw vh vm)" }</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;figure&gt; &lt;head&gt;The TEI Logo&lt;/head&gt; &lt;figDesc&gt;Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters &lt;mentioned&gt;TEI&lt;/mentioned&gt; in   between and &lt;mentioned&gt;text encoding initiative&lt;/mentioned&gt; underneath, all on a white   background.&lt;/figDesc&gt; &lt;graphic height="600px" width="600px"   url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/&gt; &lt;/figure&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

## 2.5.10. teidata.pattern

<b>teidata.pattern</b> defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;dataRef name="token"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.pattern = token</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A regular expression, often called a <i>pattern</i>, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings <i>Handel</i>, <i>Händel</i>, and <i>Haendel</i> can be described by the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> <i>matches</i> each of the three strings)</p> <p>Wikipedia This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.</p>

## 2.5.11. teidata.point

<b>teidata.point</b> defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;dataRef name="token"   restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\\.[0-9]+)?)" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\\.[0-9]+)?)" }</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;facsimile&gt; &lt;surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280"&gt;   &lt;zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234"&gt;     &lt;graphic url="handwriting.png" /&gt;   &lt;/zone&gt; &lt;/surface&gt; &lt;/facsimile&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

## 2.5.12. teidata.pointer

<b>teidata.pointer</b> defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.	
<b>Module</b>	tei

Used by	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>app/@from</code></li> <li>• <code>app/@to</code></li> <li>• <code>pb/@facs</code></li> <li>• <code>pc/@ana</code></li> <li>• <code>rdg/@wit</code></li> </ul>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="anyURI" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI</pre>
Note	<p>The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 <i>Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax</i>. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 <i>Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs)</i> mapping to URIs. For example, <code>https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%</code> is encoded as <code>https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25</code> while <code>http://-mr---nx.mirbg4--n###.#####-#####.####/</code> is encoded as <code>http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbhlc/</code></p>

### 2.5.13. teidata.probCert

<b>teidata.probCert</b> defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef key="teidata.probability"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.probCert = teidata.probability   teidata.certainty</pre>

### 2.5.14. teidata.probability

<b>teidata.probability</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.	
Module	tei
Used by	<code>teidata.probCert</code>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="double"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.probability = xsd:double</pre>
Note	<p>Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing <i>certainly false</i> and 1 representing <i>certainly true</i>.</p>

### 2.5.15. teidata.replacement

<b>teidata.replacement</b> defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

<b>Declaration</b>	<code>teidata.replacement = text</code>

### 2.5.16. teidata.temporal.iso

<b>teidata.temporal.iso</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard <i>Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times</i> .	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="date"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYear"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYearMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonthDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="time"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="dateTime"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.temporal.iso =   xsd:date     xsd:gYear     xsd:gMonth     xsd:gDay     xsd:gYearMonth     xsd:gMonthDay     xsd:time     xsd:dateTime     token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" } </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the <code>dateTime</code> representation should be used.</p> <p>For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a <i>basic</i> and an <i>extended</i> format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.</p> <p>While ISO 8601 permits the use of both <code>00:00</code> and <code>24:00</code> to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of <code>24:00</code>.</p>

### 2.5.17. teidata.temporal.w3c

<b>teidata.temporal.w3c</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i> specification.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="date"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYear"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYearMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonthDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="time"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="dateTime"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.temporal.w3c =   xsd:date     xsd:gYear     xsd:gMonth     xsd:gDay     xsd:gYearMonth     xsd:gMonthDay     xsd:time </pre>

	xsd:dateTime
<b>Note</b>	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

## 2.5.18. teidata.text

<b>teidata.text</b> defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>cb</u>/<u>@n</u></li> <li>• <u>div</u>/<u>@n</u></li> <li>• <u>l</u>/<u>@n</u></li> <li>• <u>lg</u>/<u>@n</u></li> <li>• <u>pb</u>/<u>@n</u></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="string"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.text = string</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

## 2.5.19. teidata.truthValue

<b>teidata.truthValue</b> defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>sourceDesc</u>/<u>@default</u></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="boolean"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean</pre>
<b>Note</b>	The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: <b>teidata.xTruthValue</b> .

## 2.5.20. teidata.version

<b>teidata.version</b> defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>teiCorpus</u>/<u>@version</u></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }</pre>
<b>Note</b>	The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number ( <a href="http://unicode.org/versions/">http://unicode.org/versions/</a> ). A version number contains digits and fullstop

characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

## 2.5.21. teidata.versionNumber

<b>teidata.versionNumber</b> defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.versionNumber =   token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }</pre>

## 2.5.22. teidata.word

<b>teidata.word</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	teidata.enumeratedElement: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>app/@loc</code></li> <li>• <code>hi/@rend</code></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="^[^p{C}\p{Z}]+"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.word = token { pattern = "^[^p{C}\p{Z}]+"</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

## 2.5.23. teidata.xTruthValue

<b>teidata.xTruthValue</b> (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>said/@aloud</code></li> <li>• <code>said/@direct</code></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="boolean"/&gt;     &lt;valList&gt;       &lt;valItem ident="unknown"/&gt;       &lt;valItem ident="inapplicable"/&gt;     &lt;/valList&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean   ( "unknown"   "inapplicable" )</pre>
<b>Note</b>	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype <code>teidata.TruthValue</code> .

## 2.5.24. teidata.xpath

<b>teidata.xpath</b> defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.
--



<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.xpath = text</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in .</p> <p>When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.</p>